



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600089628\$







A  
COMPENDIOUS GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
MODERN GERMAN LANGUAGE.

BY  
FRANZ C. F. DEMMLER,  
A MEMBER OF THE PROTESTANT CLERGY OF WURTEMBERG,  
AND PROFESSOR AT THE STAFF COLLEGE, SANDHURST.

"NE QUID NIMIS."

---

New and thoroughly Revised Edition.

---

LONDON:  
DAVID NUTT, 270, STRAND.

—  
1859.

303. a. 15.

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY WERTHEIMER AND CO.  
FINSBURY CIRCUS.



## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS Grammar was first published eighteen years ago. Owing to its having then been stereotyped, no alterations or improvements of any import could have been introduced, although several editions of it were afterwards printed. The present will be found rather a new work than a new edition. It embodies the experience of one who, for many years sole German Master at the Royal Military College, had to teach under circumstances of particular difficulty, such as perhaps no instructor will have to meet again.

The Grammar, in the shape in which it is now offered to the public, claims to be, in as narrow a compass as the nature of the subjects allows, a popular version of the Grimm-Becker system. The arrangement, which will be found to have reduced the elementary part to the utmost simplicity; also, the treatment of the rules on the construction of the sentence; and the whole of the third section, are the Author's own. The brevity of the work is one of the points, which the Author should wish to be reckoned among its merits. It is much easier to swell a Grammar by a vain display of learning, than to limit its substance to those indispensable points, without a complete knowledge of which the student can never hope to gain a firm footing in the language.

Any teacher, who is a true scholar himself, will make it his first care quickly to lead his pupil to a point, on which, instead of being taught the language from the Grammar, the student may be taught the Grammar from the language. To make him write frivolous exercises on the elements under pretence of so much the better impressing them on his memory, ought to be considered as a wanton waste of time. Practising the elementary part verbally, gives you the advantage of being enabled to go over ten times as much ground as is possible with the same amount of labour in writing. If you teach the pupil, in a rational method, the scientific principles on which the declensions and



conjugations rest, he will never forget them; and, with the help of a few simple rules, he will have the faculty almost from the very outset, not only to find his way in reading easy German pieces, but also to form sentences himself:—that is to say, to express his thoughts in German, if not altogether correctly, at all events intelligibly. This is the meaning of the Preliminary Chapter of this Grammar. A solid elementary foundation being once laid, the rest will follow as a matter of course. The Grammar, therefore, has purposely been made short enough to be remembered in all its principal details by any tolerably diligent pupil.

The Author trusts that the better class of German teachers—unfortunately not very numerous in this country,—will find his Grammar and the Exercises which form the sequel to it, of great assistance and practical use in instructing pupils of even moderate ability. He has been anxious not to introduce any of those elementary or syntactical rules with which an English student must be supposed to be familiar from the Grammar of his own language. For similar reasons, no German alphabet is given, as any English person is able to read black letter, from which the German character differs very little. Those who are competent to form a judgment on these matters, will, he hopes, acknowledge the great care which he has taken in stating the rules with terseness, clearness, and precision. There may be among them German university-men of sterling acquirements, who have known to their own cost, that amidst the fussy clatter of a host of noisy, hollow pretenders, it is sometimes difficult for the quiet scholar to get a hearing; but in science as in life, earnest and honest truth must and will prevail in the end.

THE AUTHOR.

STAFF COLLEGE,  
*March, 1859.*

# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

---

## PRELIMINARY CHAPTER.

CONTAINING PART OF THE CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS *haben* AND *seyn*,  
AND SOME RULES OF CONSTRUCTION SERVING TO FORM SIMPLE  
SENTENCES.

---

### INFINITIVE.

*Present.* *seyn*, to be. *haben*, to have.  
*Past.* *gewesen seyn*, to have been. *gehabt haben*, to have had.

---

### PRESENT TENSE.

#### *Singular number.*

1st. p.	<i>Ich bin</i> , I am.	<i>ich habe</i> , I have.
2nd. p.	<i>du bist</i> , thou art.	<i>du hast</i> , thou hast.
3rd. p.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{er} \\ \text{sie} \\ \text{es} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{he} \\ \text{ist, she} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\} \text{is.}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{er} \\ \text{sie} \\ \text{es} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{he} \\ \text{hat, she} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\} \text{has.}$

#### *Plural number.*

1st p.	<i>Wir sind</i> , we are.	<i>wir haben</i> , we have.
2nd p.	<i>ihr seyd</i> , you are.	<i>ihr habet</i> , you have.
3rd p.	<i>sie sind</i> , they are.	<i>sie haben</i> , they have.

In polite address, the third person plural is used instead of the second singular or plural, *e.g.*, *Sie sind*, *Sie haben*, instead of *du bist*, or *du hast*, or also instead of *ihr habt*, *ihr seyd*. *Sie* is then always spelt with a capital S.

## RELATIVE PAST, OR, IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p.	Ich war, I was.	ich hatte, I had.
2nd p.	du warst, thou wast.	du hattest, thou hadst.
3rd p.	er war, he was.	er hatte, he had.

*Plural.*

1st p.	Wir waren, we were.	wir hatten, we had.
2nd p.	ihr waret, you were.	ihr hattet, you had.
3rd p.	sie waren, they were.	sie hatten, they had.

## ABSOLUTE PAST, OR, PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p.	Ich bin } gewesen.	I have } been.	ich habe } gehabt.	I have } had.
2nd p.	du bist }	thou hast }	du hast }	thou hast }
3rd p.	er ist }	he has }	er hat }	he has }

*Plural.*

1st p.	Wir sind } gewesen.	we have } been.	wir haben } gehabt.	we have } had.
2nd p.	ihr seyd }	you have }	ihr habet }	you have }
3rd p.	sie sind }	they have }	sie haben }	they have }

FUTURE TENSE OF *seyn*.*Singular.**Plural.*

1st p.	Ich werde } seyn.	I shall } be.	wir werden } seyn.	we shall } be.
2nd p.	du wirst }	thou wilt }	ihr werdet }	you will }
3rd p.	er wird }	he will }	sie werden }	they will }

The future tense of all verbs is conjugated in the same way, being formed of the conjugated present tense of the auxiliary verb *werden*, and of their own infinitive. Having, therefore, once learned the conjugation of the future tense of *seyn*, you likewise know the same tense of *haben*, and of every other verb in the language:—*Ich werde haben, Ich werde fragen, Ich werde finden*, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.*

2nd p.	sey (du), be (thou).	habe (du), have (thou).
3rd p.	sey er, let him be.	habe er, let him have.

*Plural.*

1st p.	sey mir, let us be.	haben wir, let us have.
2nd p.	seyd (ihr), be (you).	habet (ihr), have (you).
3rd p.	seyn sie, let them be.	haben sie, let them have, or have you, or be you, (see mem. after the present tense).

*Remark 1.* The present tense of all regular verbs is conjugated—with but a few modifications to be mentioned in the sequel—like that of *haben*. This will be seen from the following examples, in which the present tenses of the verbs, *fragen*, to ask, and of *finden*, to find, are put side by side with that of *haben*.

*Singular.*

1st p.	ich habe.	ich frage.	ich finde.
2nd p.	du hast.	du fragest (fragst).	du findest.
3rd p.	er hat	er fragt (fragt).	er findet.

*Plural.*

1st p.	mir haben.	wir fragen.	wir finden.
2nd p.	ihr habet.	ihr fraget.	ihr findet.
3rd p.	sie haben.	sie fragen.	sie finden.

*Hast* is contracted from *habest*, or *habst*, and *hat* from *habet*, or *habt*, as in English, “thou hast,” is from “thou havest,” and “he has,” from “he haves.” The same contraction is not allowed in other verbs. You are not, therefore, to conjugate: *Sch lobbe*, (I praise), *du lost*, *er lot*; but, *Sch lobe*, *du lobst* (lobest), *er lobt* (lobet). The plural of the present tense is regular in all conjugations.

*Remark 2.* The imperfect tense of all the verbs of what is called the modern form, is conjugated like that of *haben*; it being understood that *hatte* is contracted from *habte* (*habete*), as the English, “I had” is instead of “I haved.” Thus, *sagen*, (to say), makes *sagte*; *antworten*, (to answer), *antwortete*. The imperfect of these verbs is, therefore, conjugated as follows:—

*Singular.*

1st p.	ich hatte, I had.	ich sagte, I said.	ich antwortete, I answered.
2nd p.	du hattest.	du sagtest.	du antwortetest.
3rd p.	er hatte.	er sagte.	er antwortete.

*Plural.*

1st p.	wir hatten.	wir sagten.	wir antworteten.
2nd p.	ihr hattet.	ihr sagtet.	ihr antwortetet.
3rd p.	sie hatten.	sie sagten.	sie antworteten.

The classification of the verbs into verbs of the ancient, and of the modern form will be fully explained in the sequel. Some short hints will suffice here. Verbs, like *finden*, (to find), *sprechen*, (to speak), *schreiben*, (to write), which belong to the conjugation of the ancient form, make in the Imperfect *not*: *Ich fandete*, *ich sprachte*, *ich schreibte*; but, *Ich fand*, *ich sprach*, *ich schrieb*; just as in English—where the same distinction is to be recognized—you do not say, “I findet,” “I speake,” “I writet;” but, “I found,” “I spoke,” “I wrote.” On the other hand, the verbs of the modern form—as shown in the examples given above—are conjugated in the Imperfect by adding to the radical portion of the verb the termination *-te* or *-ete*, which corresponds to the termination *-ed*, added in the same tense to the English verb, as *e.g.*, I ask-ed, I prais-ed.

**Remark 3.** The Imperfect of the verbs of the ancient form is conjugated after the example of that of *seyn*.

*Singular.*

1st p.	ich war,	ich sprach,	ich fand,	ich schrieb,
	I was.	I spoke.	I found.	I wrote.
2nd p.	du warst,	du sprachst.	du fandest.	du schriebst.
3rd p.	er war.	er sprach.	er fand.	er schrieb.

*Plural.*

1st p.	wir waren.	wir sprachen.	wir fanden.	wir schrieben.
2nd p.	ihr waret.	ihr sprachet.	ihr fandet.	ihr schriebet.
3rd p.	sie waren.	sie sprachen.	sie fanden.	sie schrieben.

**Remark 4.** Some verbs have the same monosyllabic conjugation, not in the imperfect, but in the present tense. Their plural, however, according to the general rule (see Remark 1.), is formed regularly from their infinitive. These verbs are, *können*, *dürfen*, *mögen*, *wollen*, *sollen*, *müssen*, *wissen*. Their present tense is conjugated as follows:—

*Singular.*

1st p.	ich kann,	ich darf,	ich will,	ich soll,	ich muß,	ich weiß,
	(I can).	(I dare).	(I will).	(I shall).	(I must).	(I know).
2nd p.	du kannst.	du darfst.	du willst.	du sollst.	du mußt.	du weißt.
3rd p.	er kann.	er darf.	er will.	er soll.	er muß.	er weiß.

*Plural.*

1st p.	wir können.	wir dürfen.	wir wollen.	wir sollen.	wir müssen.	wir wissen.
2nd p.	ihr könnt.	ihr dürft.	ihr wollet.	ihr sollt.	ihr müßt.	ihr wißt.
3rd p.	sie können.	sie dürfen.	sie wollen.	sie sollen.	sie müssen.	sie wissen.

*Remark 5.* The perfect tense of all verbs is conjugated, in one respect, like that of the verbs *seyn* and *haben*, the neuter verbs forming it by the conjugated present tense of the verb *seyn* and their own participle past; the transitive verbs by the conjugated present tense of the verb *haben*, and, likewise, their own participle past.

1. Neuter verbs are those signifying a condition, like *seyn*; or a state of movement or transition, like *gehen*, to go, *reisen*, to travel; or also a condition which is the contrary of movement or change, as, *stehen*, to stand, *bleiben*, to remain. Transitive verbs are those signifying action, like *machen*, to make; *schicken*, to send; *holen*, to fetch. More will be said about this distinction hereafter. Neuter as well as transitive verbs may belong to either form, ancient or modern.

2. The participle past of all the verbs of modern form is like that of *haben*. As, *haben* makes *gehabt* (ge-hab-t); thus, *machen* makes *gemacht* (ge-mach-t); *schicken*, *geschickt* (ge-schick-t); *holen*, *geholt* (ge-hol-t); *reisen*, *gereist* (ge-reis-t).

3. The rules concerning the different classes of the verbs of the ancient form will be given in a subsequent chapter. For the present purpose it is sufficient to state, that *stehen* makes *gestanden*; *bleiben*, *geblieben*; *gehen*, *gegangen*.

4. The conjugation of the perfect tense of these verbs, which may serve as an example of all others of respectively the same class and division, is, therefore, as follows:

## NEUTER VERBS.

1st p.	ich bin	} gestanden; or gelieben; or gegangen; also, geruht.
2nd p.	du bist	
3rd p.	er ist	
1st p.	wir sind	} gestanden; or gelieben; or gegangen; also, geruht.
2nd p.	ihr seyd	
3rd p.	sie sind	

## TRANSITIVE VERBS.

*Singular.*

1st p.	ich habe	} gemacht; or, geschickt; or, geholt; also, gefunden; ge- sprochen; geschrieben.
2nd p.	du hast	
3rd p.	er hat	

*Plural.*

1st p.	wir haben	} gemacht; or, geschickt; or, geholt; also, gefunden; ge- sprochen; geschrieben.
2nd p.	ihr habet	
3rd p.	sie haben	

5. The English language employs the verb "to do" as an auxiliary verb, especially in interrogative and negative sentences, *e.g.*, "did he say so?" — "I do not know." This construction is not used in German, where those sentences would simply be, "sagte er so?" "ich weiß nicht." (Said he so? — I know not.)

## SHORT RULES ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE SENTENCE.

### 1.—PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

*Rule.* In a principal sentence, the direct (conjugated) verb always takes the second place. It follows, therefore, that

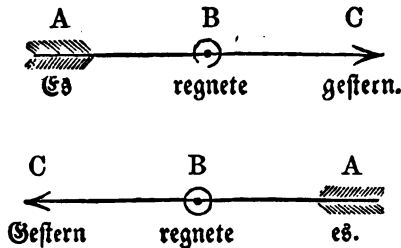
1. When the subject stands first, the direct verb is to be placed immediately after the subject, *e.g.*,  
Es regnete gestern, it rained yesterday.
2. When any other part of speech (adverb, adjective, an objective case of a noun, etc.) stands first, the verb precedes the subject.

Gestern regnete es, yesterday rained it (yesterday did it rain).

*Remark 1.* In English, the adverb is sometimes put between the subject and the verb, *e.g.*, in sentences such as, "It always rains," "I never thought." This is not done in German, where according to the rule given above, you are always to put the verb of the principal sentence in the second place, and where, consequently these sentences would run thus:—Es regnet immer (it rains always): Ich dachte nie (I thought never).

**Remark 2.** A sentence, in which the verb is placed before the subject, is called an inverted sentence. The exact rules concerning the use of the inversion will be given in the sequel. For the present it suffices to know, that the inversion (putting the verb before the subject) *must* be made use of in the principal sentence, whenever any other part of speech but the subject is put at the head of it.

**Remark 3.** The direct verb being, as it were, the immovable pivot on which the principal sentence turns, the above rule may be demonstrated by means of the following representation of an arrow, which should be supposed to turn round its centre point. A, designates the subject; B, the verb; C, any other part of speech.



The order is to be,  
 A    B    C  
 or, C    B    A

The order is never to be,  
 A    C    B  
 nor, C    A    B.

**Additional rule 1.** The participle and infinitive, quite irrespective of the position of the direct conjugated verb, are placed behind all the other parts of speech; when there is a participle, and an infinitive besides, the infinitive stands behind the participle, *e.g.*

*Es hat seit gestern nicht geregnet.* It has not rained since yesterday.

*Es wird morgen wahrscheinlich nicht regnen.* It will not probably rain to-morrow.

*Es kann seit gestern nicht geregnet haben.* It cannot have rained since yesterday.



These sentences being placed in the inverted position, the order would be

Seit gestern hat es nicht geregnet.  
 or, Morgen wird es wahrscheinlich } nicht regnen.  
       Wahrscheinlich wird es morgen }  
 Seit gestern kann es nicht geregnet haben.

Additional rule 2. In direct questions, the conjugated verb is placed either

1. at the head of the sentence, or,
  2. immediately after the interrogative pronoun or particle;
- the remaining parts of speech being arranged as in any other principal sentence, *e.g.*

Regnete es gestern?

Hat es seit gestern geregnet?

Wie oft (how often) hat es seit gestern geregnet?

## II.—ACCESSORY SENTENCE.

*Rule.* In an accessory sentence, the direct conjugated verb is to be placed at the end, and even after the participles and infinitives.

Ich war zu Hause, während es gestern regnete.

I was at home, whilst it rained yesterday.

Es ist warm, obgleich es seit gestern geregnet hat.

It is warm although it has rained since yesterday.

Ich glaube nicht, daß es morgen regnen wird.

I do not think, that it will rain to-morrow.

## SECTION I.—THE WORD.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### GENDER. ARTICLES, AND PRONOUNS, WITH THEIR DECLENSIONS.

##### GENDER.

There are in German, as in English, three genders:—  
the Masculine,  
the Feminine,  
the Neuter.

It is to be borne in mind, that the German nouns substantive are classed in their several genders not according to natural, but according to grammatical rule. Thus, *der Mond* (the moon) is of masculine; *die Sonne* (the sun) of feminine; and *das Schiff* (the ship) of neuter gender. The moon is, therefore, spoken of in German as “he,” the sun as “she,” and the ship as “it.” Somewhat similarly, the sun is spoken of in English as “he,” the moon as “she,” and the ship—at least in common parlance—likewise as “she”; although neither sun, nor moon, nor ships are persons or animate beings. In German, the disregard of natural classification in reference to gender goes even farther. Not only may nouns denoting things be of any of the three genders; but, what is more extraordinary, even nouns denoting persons do not always follow their natural gender; *e. g.*, *das Weib* (the woman) is not of feminine, but of neuter gender; and—in accordance with a rule applying to all diminutives—there are classed in the neuter gender also substantives like *das Männlein*, the little man; *das Fräulein*, the young lady; *das Mädchen*, the (little) maid. Grammatical rules by which to determine the gender of substantives, will be given in the chapter on derivation; in the present chapter, we have to do with the gender in reference only to the form and declension of the articles and pronouns.

## DECLENSION.

The articles show the three genders by different terminations, and are declined likewise by change of termination.

The following table, explaining the import of the four cases, may serve as a guide to those who have not had the advantage of a classical education.

The Nominative answers to the question	Who?
The Genitive       "       "       "	Whose?
The Dative       "       "       "	to Whom?
The Accusative   "       "       "	Whom?

## A.

## DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.\*

<i>Singular number.</i>			<i>Plural number.</i>
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
Nominative. der.	die.	daß, the.	die, the.
Genitive. des.	der.	des, of the.	der, of the.
Dative. dem.	der.	dem, to the.	den, to the.
Accusative. den.	die.	daß, the.	die, the.

This declension will be spoken of in the sequel as the articular declension.

## B.

## DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

In this declension, the ending of the articular declension is dropped in the nominative of the masculine and neuter, and in the accusative neuter.

<i>Singular number.</i>			
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
Nominative. ein.	eine.	ein, a or an.	
Genitive. eines.	einer.	eines, of a.	
Dative. einem.	einer.	einem, to a.	
Accusative. einen.	eine.	ein, a.	

*No Plural.*

*Remark 1.* In the feminine and neuter, and also in the plural of all the declensions of the articles and pronouns (except in the plural of the first and second persons of the personal pronoun), the nominative and accusative are alike.

---

\* It will be found more to the purpose in all the declensions of the articles and pronouns, to learn each gender by itself.

*Remark 2.* The genitive and dative of the feminine are alike.

*Remark 3.* The genitive and dative of the neuter are each like that of the masculine.

## C.

## DECLENSION OF THE SIMPLE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	
Nom.	dieser.	diese.	dieses, this, or this one.	diese, these.
Gen.	dieses.	dieser.	dieses, of this.	dieser, of these.
Dat.	diesem.	dieser.	diesem, to this.	diesen, to these.
Acc.	diesen.	diese.	dieses, this.	diese, these.

This declension is the same as that of the definite article, except that the ending *-ie* is changed into *-e*, and *-as* into *-es*: — *diese*, not *diefie*; *dieses*, not *diesas*. The adjective, under certain conditions to be stated in the sequel, is declined in the same manner, as are also the demonstrative pronoun *jener* (*yon*), that; and the indefinite numerals *aller*, all; *einiger*, some; *mancher*, many a —; and others of the same description. *Jeder*, every one, and *jeder*, such a one, which sometimes take the indefinite article (*ein jeder*, *ein jeder*), are to be declined according to the rule applying to the adjectives. *Jeder* is only rarely used in the plural. *Gold* is sometimes put before the indefinite article, just as “*such*” is in English; and in this position, *gold* is not declined: — *Gold ein Mann*, genit. *gold eines Mannes*, etc.

## D.

## DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

## a. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1.	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	of all genders.
N.	welcher.	welche.	welches, who, or which.	welche, who, or which.
G.	welches.*	welcher.*	welches,* whose.	welcher,* whose.
D.	welchem.	welcher.	welchem, to whom, or to which.	welchen, to whom, or to which.
A.	welchen.	welche.	welches, whom, or which.	welche, whom, or which.

\* The genitive of *welcher* is scarcely ever used. The genitive of the other relative pronoun, *der*, is used instead.

2.	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	of all genders.
N. der.	die.	das, who, or which ; or also, this, or that.		die.
G. dessen.	deren.	dessen.		deren, or derer.*
D. dem.	der.	dem.		denen.
A. den.	die.	das.		die.

## b. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

	1. <i>Personal.</i>	2. <i>Impersonal.</i>
Nom.	Wer, who ?	Was, what ?
Gen.	Wessen, or wess, whose ?	Wessen, or wess, of what ?
Dat.	Wem, to whom ?	(wanting).
Accus.	Wen, whom ?	Was, what ?

*Remark 1.* Welcher is also used —

a. As an interrogative pronoun, just as the pronoun “which” is in English, when the question lies between a known or definite number of persons or things; *e.g.*, Welcher von diesen drei Männern? Which of these three men? Welcher von Ihren Freunden? Which of your friends?—and in instances where the interrogative pronoun is joined to a noun; *e.g.*, In welches Land reisen Sie? What country are you going to?

b. As an indefinite numeral, instead of the obsolete etwelcher, *some*; *e.g.*, Haben Sie Geld? Ich habe welches. Have you (got) any money? I have (got) some.

*Remark 2.* Der, as a relative pronoun, is quite equivalent to welcher. The two are generally made to alternate, in order to avoid the repetition of the same word. Der is besides used as a demonstrative pronoun, especially before a relative pronoun; *e.g.*, Gib dein Almosen denen, die es brauchen. Give your alms to those who need them.—In sentences like this, it would be wrong to use the pronoun jener (jenen instead of denen), a mistake to which the English are very liable.

The genitive case of the demonstrative pronoun der supplies the possessive pronoun of the third person in sentences like the following:—

---

\* Derer is the genitive of der, when used as demonstrative pronoun before welcher.

Herr Brown hat Herrn Smith und dessen Bruder eingeladen.

Mr. Brown has invited Mr. Smith and his (Mr. Smith's, not his own) brother.

In this manner, the ambiguity is avoided that would arise in this sentence, if the possessive pronoun *sein* were used, which might mean the brother of either Mr. Brown himself, or Mr. Smith; whilst *dessen Bruder* can here only mean, Mr. Smith's brother.

*Mem.*—*Der*, when used in the nominative as a demonstrative pronoun without a substantive, can be followed by no other relative pronoun but *welcher*; *das*, only by *was*: — *der, welcher* —; *das, was* —; *he, who* —; *that, which* —.

*Remark 3.* *Wer*, the indefinite interrogative pronoun, is used without reference to number or gender; *e.g.*, *Wer ist gekommen?* is a question to which the answer might be, that either a man, or a woman, either one person or more, have come; in short, there is the same difference in this respect between *wer* and *welcher*, as there is between “who?” and “which?” when used as interrogative pronouns.

*Was* is the neuter of *wer*, and is used like the English “what,” with reference to things and notions only; *e.g.*,

*Was hat er dir gegeben?*

What has he given you?

*Was hat sie gesagt?*

What has she said?

*Remark 4.* *Wer* and *was* are also used, *wer* as an indefinite personal, and *was* as an indefinite numeral, pronoun: *wer* instead of the obsolete *etwer*; *was* instead of *etwas*; especially in combination with adverbs, like *irgend*, or *sonst*: — *irgend wer*, somebody, or anybody; *sonst wer*, some one else; *irgend was*, something, or anything; *sonst was*, something else. *Was*, in fact, is used, especially in conversation, as an equivalent to the pronoun *etwas*; *e.g.*, *Hat er dir was (or, etwas) gesagt?* — *Er sagte mir was (etwas) Neues.* Has he told you anything? — He told me something new (some piece of news).

*Remark 5.* *Wer* is used as a compound relative pronoun, expressing “he, who” in one word. *Was*, like the English “what,” is used to express “that, which”; *e.g.*,

Wer bald gibt, gibt doppelt.

He who gives promptly, gives doubly.

Was die Narren sagen, kümmert mich nicht.

What fools say, does not affect me.

*Remark 6.* Was für ein? is the interrogative pronoun in asking the question, "What sort? what description of?"—Was für ein Buch wünschen Sie? What sort of book do you want?—This compound pronoun takes simply the declension of ein; and, in the plural, was für, without article:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Was für ein Sohn.	Was für Söhne.
G. Was für eines Sohnes.	Was für Söhne.*
D. Was für einem Sohn.	Was für Söhnen.
A. Was für einen Sohn.	Was für Söhne.

Welch ein is used in exactly the same way:—welch ein Sohn, welch eines Sohnes, etc. Welch, however, is to be declined in the plural:—Welche Söhne, welcher Söhne, etc. Both these compound pronouns are made use of in exclamatory sentences; *e.g.*, Was für eine Schande! or, Welch eine Schande! What a disgrace!

*Remark 7.* When the demonstrative pronouns dieser, and der; the personal pronouns of the third person, singular and plural; and the relative pronoun welcher, refer to inanimate things, or to notions, they are not to be construed with prepositions; but dieser is supplied by *hie*, or *hier*; *der*, and the personal pronouns, by *da*; and *welcher* by *wo*; to which the preposition is affixed. Just as in English you say, "herewith," "therewith," "wherewith," you say in German, *hiermit* (*hiemit*), *damit*, *womit*. When the preposition begins with a vowel, the consonant "r" is put between those adverbs and the preposition; *e.g.*, *hierin*, *darin*, *worin* *herein*, *therein*, *wherein*.

*Ecmit* and *sonach* are sometimes used in official language or in learned argument instead of *hiermit* and *hiernach*. The use of *so* as an adverbial relative pronoun, *e.g.*, in this passage taken from Schiller, *die Reitknechte*, *so die Pandpferde ihrer Herrn ritten* (the grooms, who rode the led horses of their masters), is now obsolete.

---

\* The genitive can be used only with an adjective preceding the substantive; *e.g.*, *was für gehorsamer Söhne*.

## E.

## DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*Singular.*

<i>1st Person.</i>	<i>2nd Person.</i>	<i>3rd Person.</i>		
		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>ich, I.</i>	<i>du, thou (you).</i>	<i>er, he.</i>	<i>ſie, she.</i>	<i>eſ, it.</i>
G. <i>meiner, or mein</i> of me.	<i>deiner, or dein,</i> of thee.	<i>ſeiner, or ſein,</i> of him.	<i>ihrer,</i> of her.	<i>ſeiner,*</i> of it.
D. <i>mir, to me.</i>	<i>dir, to thee.</i>	<i>ihm, to him.</i>	<i>ihr, to her.</i>	<i>ihm, to it.*</i>
A. <i>miß, me.</i>	<i>diß, thee.</i>	<i>ihn, him.</i>	<i>ſie, her.</i>	<i>eſ, it.</i>

*Plural.*

<i>1st Person.</i>	<i>2nd Person.</i>	<i>3rd Person.</i>
N. <i>wir, we.</i>	<i>ihr, you.</i>	<i>ſie, they (you).</i>
G. <i>unſer, of us.</i>	<i>euer, of you.</i>	<i>ihrer, of them (of you).</i>
D. <i>unß, to us.</i>	<i>euch, to you.</i>	<i>ihnen, to them (to you).</i>
A. <i>unß, us.</i>	<i>euch, you.</i>	<i>ſie, them (you).</i>

*Remark 1.* The cases of the personal pronouns are also used as reflective pronouns, except in the third person, where *ſich* is used as dative and accusative for all genders, both in the singular and plural. This may be shown by the conjugation of the present tense of the reflective form of the verb *beſchäftigen*.

*Singular.*

1st p.	<i>Ich beſchäftige mich,</i>	<i>I employ myself.</i>
2nd p.	<i>du beſchäftigſt dich,</i>	<i>thou employeſt thyſelf.</i>
3rd p.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{er} \\ \text{ſie} \\ \text{eſ} \end{array} \right\} \text{beſchäftigt ſich,}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he employs himſelf.} \\ \text{ſhe employs herſelf.} \\ \text{it employs itſelf.} \end{array} \right.$

*Plural.*

1st p.	<i>Wir beſchäftigen unß,</i>	<i>we employ ourſelves.</i>
2nd p.	<i>ihr beſchäftigt euch,</i>	<i>you employ yourſelves.</i>
3rd p.	<i>ſie beſchäftigen ſich,</i>	<i>they employ themſelves.</i>

*Remark 2.* The reflective pronoun *ſich*, and thoſe caſes of the personal pronoun uſed as reflective pronouns (ſee Remark 1.), ſerve likewiſe as reciprocal pronouns; *e.g.*,

---

\* The genitive and dative of *eſ* are not uſed when it refers to an inanimate thing, or to a notion.



**Wir werden uns wiedersehen.**

**We shall see each other again.**

**Sie haben sich Treue zugeschworen.**

**They have sworn fidelity to each other.**

The notion of reciprocal action is likewise expressed by the indeclinable pronoun *einander*, which is the exact equivalent of the English "one another," or "each other." It should always be used when the verb might otherwise be mistaken for a reflective verb. Thus, the sentence, "they reminded each other," is to be rendered by, "*sie erinnerten einander*," as the version "*sie erinnerten sich*," would convey the meaning "they remembered," which is that of the reflective verb, *sich erinnern*; whilst *erinnern*, as a simple transitive verb, means, "to remind."

*Remark 3.* The indeclinable pronoun *selbst*, or *selber* (equivalent to the Latin *ipse*), is not in itself reflective, although it may occasionally be joined to a reflective pronoun. It had, perhaps, best be called the emphatical personal pronoun.

*a.* Being placed behind a substantive, or a personal pronoun, it has the meaning of the English "myself, himself," etc., in sentences like, "I have given Mr. Brown the letter myself"; or, "I have given the letter to Mr. Robinson himself." In these sentences, "myself" expresses, that I have given the letter to Mr. B. in person; that I, and no one else, was the bearer of it; "himself" expresses, that I have given it to Mr. R., and to no other person. We should, therefore, translate the former sentence by, *Ich selbst habe den Brief Herrn Brown gegeben*; and the second sentence by, *Ich habe den Brief Herrn Robinson selbst gegeben*. But it would be wrong to translate, "I amuse myself," "we trouble ourselves," and similar phrases by, *Ich unterhalte mich selbst*, and *wir bemühen uns selbst*. "Myself," and "ourselves," being, in this instance, reflective pronouns, are simply to be translated by *mich* and *uns*, without *selbst*.

*b.* Being placed before a substantive or a personal pronoun, it has the meaning of "even," in sentences like, "Even the poorest man may be happy, *selbst der ärmste Mann kann glücklich seyn*." The adverb *sogar* is used to express the same meaning.

*Remark 4.* The explanation of the anomalies in the use of the personal pronouns as mode of address, will find its proper place in

the third section of the Grammar. After what has been stated in the preliminary chapter, it suffices to point out here, that —

*a.* **Du** is the address of intimacy and familiarity with individuals.

*b.* **Ihr** the same with a number of persons.

*c.* **Sie** (third person plural), the address of courtesy with individuals and with a number of persons.

The other modes of address are becoming more and more obsolete.

## F.

### DECLENSION OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns, according to the different persons, are,—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st p.	mein, my.	1st p. unser, our.
2nd p.	dein, thy.	2nd p. euer, your.
3rd p.	sein, his.	3rd p. ihr, their.
	ihr, her.	
	sein, its.	

Each of these pronouns is declined, in the singular after the example of the indefinite article, in the plural after that of the demonstrative pronoun, in the following manner:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	the same for all genders.
N.	mein.	meine.	mein.	meine.
G.	meines.	meiner.	meines.	meiner.
D.	meinem.	meiner.	meinem.	meinen.
A.	meinen.	meine.	mein.	meine.

*Remark 1.* The termination *-er* in *unser* and *euer* is radical, not declensional as the same termination is in *dieser* (*dies-er*). They are, therefore, declined, not *unser*, genit. *unser-es*; *euer*, genit. *eu-es*; but you add the ending of the declension to their root, making, *unser*, genit. *unser-es*; *euer*, genit. *euer-es*, etc.; just as you decline *mein*, genit. *mein-es*.

*Remark 2.* The same anomalies occur in the use of the possessive as in that of the personal pronouns:—

*a.* **Dein** is used with a person whom you address by “*du*.”

*b.* **Euer** with persons whom you address by the personal pronoun *ihr*.

- c. *Sie* (as possessive pronoun), with a person or persons whom you address by "*Sie*."

*Mem.*—*Sie* and *Sie*, in courteous address, should be written with a capital letter.

*Remark 3.* When the substantive is omitted, the possessive pronouns, as also *ein* and *kein*, follow the rules of the declension of the adjective, to be explained in the following chapter.

## G.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1.	2.	3.
N. Jemand, some one.	Niemand, no one.	Jedermann, every one.
G. Jemandens, or Jemand's.*	Niemandens, or Niemand's.	Jedermann's.
D. Jemanden, or Jemand.	Niemanden, or Niemand.	Jedermann.
A. Jemanden, or Jemand.	Niemanden, or Niemand.	Jedermann.

4. The indefinite neuter pronouns, *etwas*, *something*, and *nichts*, *nothing*, are indeclinable. *Etwas* may be combined with a following adjective, which is then declinable according to the rules to be given in the next chapter; *e. g.*, *etwas außerordentliches* ist geschehen, something extraordinary has happened; or also with the nominative, dative, or accusative of a noun; *e. g.*, *etwas Regen* würde nicht schaden, a little rain will do no harm; *Zucker* in *etwas* *Milch* aufgelöst, sugar dissolved in milk; *geben* *Sie* *mir* *etwas* *Wein*, give me a little wine. *Etwas* in these sentences always means a small quantity. *Nichts* may likewise be combined with an adjective, which is declined in the same way, as after *etwas*; *e. g.*, *nichts* *gutes*, nothing good; *kannst* *du* *von* *nichts* *besserem* *sprechen*? can you speak of nothing better?

5. The pronoun *man* is employed, like the French *on*, to express an indefinite person, where the English language uses "one," or "we," or "they," or the impersonal form of the passive voice; *e. g.*, *man* *sagt*, either "one says," or "we say," or "they say," or "it is said." This pronoun is indeclinable; and, where a case is required, the pronoun *einer* is used instead; *e. g.*, *Es* *thut* *einem* *wohl*, *die* *Sonne* *wieder* *zu* *sehen*, it does one good to see the sun again.

\* The forms placed after *or* (*Jemand's*, etc.), are more generally used than those placed before (*Jemandens*, etc.).

6. The pronominal adverb *irgend*, placed before a noun with the indefinite article; or before the indefinite pronouns *jemand*, *einer*, and *etwas*; or before *wer*, *wo*, *wie*, and *wann*, has the same meaning as the English "any," or also "some," in the same combinations. *Irgend ein Mann*, any a man, or, some man (it is not known who?); *irgend jemand*, *irgend einer*, any body, any one; not, however, in sentences where "any body" has the meaning of "every body"; as, *e.g.*, "any body may do that." This sentence would be in German, *Jedermann kann das thun*. *Irgend wie*, some how or other; *irgend wann*, at any time, etc. *Irgend*, and *nur irgend*, are also used in indefinite relative sentences like the English "ever," as the following examples may show:—

*Wer irgend (wer nur irgend) das gesagt hat, spricht die Wahrheit.*

Whoever has said that, says what is true.

*Wo du nur irgend seyn magst, wherever you may be.*

More will be said about this mode of speech in the third section.

## CHAPTER II.

### DECLENSION AND COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

*Rule I.* The adjective, used as the predicate, is not declined; *e.g.*,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Masc. <i>der Mann</i>	} <i>ist gut.</i>	<i>die Männer</i>	} <i>sind gut.</i>
Fem. <i>die Frau</i>		<i>die Frauen</i>	
Neut. <i>das Kind</i>		<i>die Kinder</i>	

It would, therefore, be wrong to say, *der Mann ist gut-er*; *die Frau ist gut-e*; *das Kind ist gut-es*; or, in the plural, *die Männer sind gut-e*, etc.

The same rule applies to sentences like the following:—"I call this man, this woman, this child good." In these instances also we should say in German,—

*Ich nenne* { *diesen Mann*  
          *diese Frau* } *gut* (not *gut-en*, or *gut-e*, or *gut-es*).  
          *dieses Kind*

This rule may be more easily understood by contrasting it with that which is observed, in this respect, in Latin and French, in which the adjective is always to agree in number and gender with its substantive, whether preceding or following it; *e.g.*, *aqua est pura*; *virī fuerunt valdissimi*; or, *la journée était très belle*; or, *voilà des choses que je trouve très mauvaises*. These sentences would be in German, *das Wasser ist rein* (not *rein-es*); *der Tag war sehr schön* (not *schön-er*); and likewise, *die Männer waren höchst tapfer* (not *tapfer-e*); *das sind Dinge, die ich schlecht* (not *schlecht-e*) *finde*. The adjective in this undeclined form is also used as adverb

**Rule II.** The adjective, used as attribute, generally precedes the substantive to which it belongs; and in this position it is declined.

In sentences, such as those quoted just now in Rule I., the adjective (*gut*) is first brought into connection with the substantive (*Mann, Frau, Kind*) by means of the verb (*ist*). It is then the predicate, and (Rule I.) is not declined; but in phrases, such as, "the good man, the good woman, the good child," (*e. g.*, this good woman loves her good child), the adjective is connected with the substantive independently of the action of the verb. It is then an attribute, and (present Rule) is declined as follows:—

**COMPLETE (OR STRONG)  
DECLENSION.**

Exactly the same as the articular declension, modified; see Chapter I., C.

<i>Singular.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—er	—e	—es
<i>Gen.</i>	—es	—er	—es
<i>Dat.</i>	—em	—er	—em
<i>Accus.</i>	—en	—e	—es.

<i>Plural</i> for all genders.	
<i>Nom.</i>	—e
<i>Gen.</i>	—er
<i>Dat.</i>	—en
<i>Acc.</i>	—e.

When the complete (articular) declension is not exhibited in the article or pronoun; the adjective takes it.

**INCOMPLETE (OR WEAK)  
DECLENSION.**

3 (genders) multiplied by 4 (cases) equal to 12 (forms).

Out of the 12 forms of the singular, 5 (nomin. of all 3 genders, and accus. of fem. and neut.) terminate in —e; the other 7 in —en.

<i>Singular.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—e	—e	—e
<i>Gen.</i>	—en	—en	—en
<i>Dat.</i>	—en	—en	—en
<i>Acc.</i>	—en	—e	—e.

*Plural.*

All four cases in —en.

When the complete (articular) declension is exhibited in the article or pronoun, the adjective takes the incomplete declension.

Consequently:—

**MASCULINE.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Guter Hirt,*</i> good shepherd.	gute Hirten. good shepherds.	der gute Hirt, the good shepherd.	die guten Hirten. the good shepherds.
G. <i>gutes Hirten.</i>	guter Hirten.	des guten Hirten.	der guten Hirten.
D. <i>gutem Hirten.</i>	guten Hirten.	dem guten Hirten.	den guten Hirten.
A. <i>guten Hirten.</i>	gute Hirten.	den guten Hirten.	die guten Hirten.

\* Of course, when there is not any article or pronoun, the articular declension cannot be exhibited by them; and, consequently, the adjective takes it.

## COMPLETE DECLENSION. | INCOMPLETE DECLENSION.

## FEMININE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Gute Hoffnung, gute Hoffnungen, good hope. good hopes.		die gute Hoffnung, die guten Hoffnungen, the good hope. the good hopes.	
G. guter Hoffnung. guter Hoffnungen.		der guten Hoffnung. der guten Hoffnungen.	
D. guter Hoffnung. guten Hoffnungen.		der guten Hoffnung. den guten Hoffnungen.	
A. gute Hoffnung. gute Hoffnungen.		die gute Hoffnung. die guten Hoffnungen.	

## NEUTER.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. gutes Herz, good heart.	gute Herzen, good hearts.	das gute Herz, the good heart.	die guten Herzen, the good hearts.
G. gutes*Herzens.	guter Herzen.	des guten Herzens.	der guten Herzen.
D. gutem Herzen.	guten Herzen.	dem guten Herzen.	den guten Herzen.
A. gutes Herz.	gute Herzen.	das gute Herz.	die guten Herzen.

As the nominative masculine and neuter, and the accusative neuter in the singular number of the indefinite article, of the negative pronoun *kein*, and of all the possessive pronouns, do not exhibit the articular termination, the adjective after any of these pronouns, as well as after the indefinite article, has, in those cases, the termination of the complete declension.

As the genitive and dative of the indefinite article, of the negative pronoun *kein*, and of all the possessive pronouns, exhibit the articular termination, the adjective after any of these pronouns, as well as after the indefinite article, has, in those cases, the termination of the incomplete declension.

The nominative and accusative feminine of the declined adjective, always terminate in *-e*.

The declension of the adjective after the indefinite article, after the negative pronoun *kein*, and after all the possessive pronouns, is, therefore, as follows:—

---

\* When the substantive (masculine or neuter) has the ending *-s* of the genitive, the adjective generally takes, in that case, the ending *-en* of the incomplete declension. It would, therefore, be better to say, *guten Herzens*. In a similar way, we should say, *ein Glas rothen Weins* (a glass of red wine), instead of *rothes Weins*.

## COMPLETE DECLENSION.

## INCOMPLETE DECLENSION.

*Singular.*

Nom. Mein guter Hirt.  
 Meine gute Hoffnung.  
 Mein gutes Herz.

Gen. Meines guten Hirten.  
 Meiner guten Hoffnung.  
 Meines guten Herzens.  
 Dat. Meinem guten Hirten.  
 Meiner guten Hoffnung.  
 Meinem guten Herzen.

Acc. Meinen guten Hirten.  
 Meine gute Hoffnung.  
 Mein gutes Herz.

*Plural.*

Nom. Meine guten Hirten.  
 Hoffnungen.  
 Herzen.  
 Gen. Meiner guten Hirten.  
 Hoffnungen.  
 Herzen.  
 Dat. Meinen guten Hirten.  
 Hoffnungen.  
 Herzen.  
 Acc. Meine guten Hirten.  
 Hoffnungen.  
 Herzen.

In the same manner, the adjective is declined after all the possessive pronouns, as well as after *mein*, and *sein*. *Ein*, as stated before, has no plural; *mein* has, therefore, been chosen as example. Remember also, Remark 1. to the declension of the possessive pronouns, concerning *unser* and *euer*. The terminations of these two forms being radical, not declensional (belonging to their root, not to their declension), the adjective after them, according to the rule, takes the ending of the complete declension in the nominative and accusative singular, and that of the incomplete declension in the genitive and dative singular, as also in all the cases of the plural. *Unser guter Hirt*; *euer gutes Herz*; but, on the other hand, *unserer guten Hoffnung*; and (plur.) *unserer guten Herzen*.

*Remark 1.* After the indefinite numerals *einige, etliche, viele, wenige, mehrere, manche, alle*; and after *andere, solche, welche*, the adjective generally takes in the nominative and accusative plural the termination of the complete, but in the genitive and dative always that of the incomplete declension, *e.g.*

- N. *alle gute Leute*, all good people.
- G. *aller guten Leute*.
- D. *allen guten Leuten*.
- A. *alle gute Leute*.

*Remark 2.* After the personal pronoun, the adjective has the termination of the complete declension, *e.g.*, the phrase, "poor me," is expressed in German, as if it were "poor I," or rather, "I poor." Now, if it is a man, who speaks of himself in this way, he will say, *ich armer!* if a woman, *ich arme!* and, in addressing another person, the same distinction of gender is to be observed according to the sex of the person spoken to:—if a man is to be addressed, it is, *du (Sie) armer*; if a woman, *du (Sie) arme*. In the plural, it is better to use the incomplete declension of the adjective *Wir, Ihr, Sie Armen!* The use of this mode of speech is much more frequent in German than in English.

*Remark 3.* The declensional ending of the adjective is very often dropped in the nominative and accusative neuter; but never in a position where the adjective according to rule ought to take the ending of the incomplete declension. You say, *schwarz Brod*, (black bread); *warm Wasser*, (warm water); *schön Wetter*, (fine weather); but not, *daß schwarz Brod*; *daß warm Wasser*; *daß schön Wetter*. In the latter combination, the adjectives must take the ending of the nominative and accusative of the incomplete declension:—*daß schwarze Brod*; *daß warme Wasser*; *daß schöne Wetter*.

*Remark 4.* When the substantive after the adjective is only understood, the pronoun, or article, and the adjective take the same declension, as if the substantive were expressed:—*e.g.*, *du Schwerdt an meiner Linken*, thou sword at my left. The substantive *Seite*, side, which is understood after *Linken*, being of the



feminine gender, the pronoun *mein*, and the adjective *linf*, are declined just as if it were an *meiner linfen Seite*. This use of the adjective without a following substantive, is likewise much more frequent in German than in English. Just as in the latter language you may speak of a negro as "a black," the substantive, "man" being understood; you say in German *der Weltweise*, the wise (man); *der Gebildete*, the cultivated (man); *der Gelehrte*, the learned (man); *der Reisende*, the travelling (man); after each of which adjectives the substantive "*Mann*" is understood. But although these and many other adjectives are used to all intents and purposes as substantives, they always retain the declension of the adjective. Thus you would have to use the incomplete declension in the combination of the adjective with the definite article, *e.g.*, *der Reisende*, the traveller, and in the plural *die Reisenden*, the travellers; but after the indefinite article you would have to use in the nominative the complete declension, *ein Reisender*, a traveller, and the same in the plural without an article, *Reisende*, travellers.

*Remark 5.* The neuter of the adjective without an article and without a following substantive has very often a plural meaning; *e.g.*, *gutes*, good things; *böses*, bad things, etc. Sometimes the neuter, used without a substantive following, is preceded by one of the indefinite numerals, *alles*, all; *vieles*, much; *einiges*, some; *mehr*, more; *wenig*, little, etc. In all these combinations the general rule is valid, that the adjective takes the complete declension, when the latter is not exhibited in the pronoun (the place of which is in these instances supplied by the indefinite numeral); and the incomplete declension, when the complete is exhibited in the pronoun. You would therefore say, *viel gutes*, *wenig gutes*, (the complete ending of the neuter being here dropped in, *viel* and *wenig*, see Remark 3.); but, on the other hand, *vieles gute*, *weniges gute*; *daß viele gute*, *daß wenige gute*. On the same principle you say, *etwas gutes*, *nichts gutes*.

*Remark 6.* Adjectives ending in *-el* or *-er* (like *edel*, noble; or *tapfer*, brave); drop the *e* of their own termination when the declensional ending is *-e* or *-er*, or *-es*, *e.g.*, *der edle Mann*; *ein edler Sohn*; *ein edles Herz*; or, *der tapfre Mann*; *ein tapfrer Sohn*;

ein tapferes Herz; but, when the declensional ending is -en, the latter e is dropped; *e.g.*, einen eben Mann; die tapfern Männer. Adjectives ending in -en, may drop the e of their own termination in all these cases; *e.g.*, verwegen, bold:—der verwegne Mann; ein verwegner Mann; ein verwegnes Herz; die verwegnen Herzen. The application of this mode of contraction is in a great measure subject to considerations of euphony.

*Remark 7.* The proper names of the inhabitants of towns, formed by adding the syllable -er to the name of the town, as for instance, London, Londoner; Berlin, Berliner; and also the proper names ending in -er of the inhabitants of certain countries, or provinces, *e.g.*, Tyroler, Schweizer, Schwarzwälder, are used as indeclinable adjectives, *e.g.*, Londoner Porter, London Porter; Berliner Waaren, Berlin wares; Tyroler Handschuhe, Tyrolese gloves; Schweizer Käse, Swiss cheese; Schwarzwälder Uhren, Black Forest (in England called Dutch) clocks.

#### B.—COMPARISON OF THE ADJECTIVES.

*Remark 1.* The degrees of comparison of the adjectives are formed, as in English by adding,

- a. the termination -er in the comparative,
- b. the termination -est or st in the superlative.

This form is used also with regard to adjectives of more than one syllable, where the English language requires the auxiliary adverbs “more,” and “most;” *e.g.*, tugendhaft, virtuous; tugendhafter, more virtuous; tugendhaftest, most virtuous.

The vowels a, o, u, of the adjectives of one syllable are modified into ä, ö, ü, in the comparative, and superlative, *e.g.*, stark, strong; stärker, stronger; stärkst, strongest. Exceptions to this rule are:—

bunt, variegated	lahm, lame	schlanf, slender
flach, flat	matt, faint	schröff, abrupt
falsch, false	platt, flat	starr, rigid
fröh, glad, or merry	plump, clumsy	straff, tightly drawn
glatt, smooth	roh, raw, or coarse	stolz, proud
hold, loving, or lovely	rund, round	stumpf, blunt
lahl, bald, or bare	sankt, gentle	toll, mad
larm, miserly	satt, satisfied	voll, full
knapp, scanty, or tight	schlaff, slack	wahr, true
	zähm, tame.	

All these adjectives form their comparative and superlative without modifying their radical vowel; *e.g.*, *glatt*, comparative *glatter*, superlative *glattest*; *fröh*, comparative *fröher*, superlative *fröhest*.

**Remark 2.** The following adjectives have an irregular form of comparison.

	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gut, good.	besser, better.	best, best.
hoch, high.	höher,* higher.	höchst, highest.
nah, near (nigh).	näher, nearer.	nächst, nearest.

The adverb *gern*, willingly, forms its comparative, *lieber*, and its superlative, *am liebsten*.

**Remark 3.** The comparative and superlative of all the adjectives are declined in the same way and according to the same rules, as the positive degree, the termination of the declension being superadded to that of the degree of comparison; *e.g.*, *mein gut-er Freund*, *mein besser-er Freund*, *mein best-er Freund*, *meines gut-en Freundes*, *meines besser-en Freundes*, *meines best-en Freundes*. *der gut-e Freund*, *der besser-e Freund*, *der best-e Freund*, etc.

**Remark 4.** There is in German, as in English a compound form of the comparative; the adverb *mehr*, more, being placed before the adjective. This form is, however, made use of only when the comparison lies, not between two or more nouns, but between two or more adjectives; *e.g.*,

*Er ist mehr witzig, als weise*, he is more witty than wise.

**Remark 5.** The comparative may be combined with various adverbs, or adverbial phrases; of which the following may be mentioned as the principal ones,

*wenig* (better), little (better); *viel* † (better), much (better);  
*ein wenig* (better), a little (better); *bei weitem* (better), by far (better);  
*ungleich* (better), (better) beyond comparison.

In phrases like "so much the better," "so much the" is rendered in German by *desto* (better), or, *um so* (better), of which

\* *hoch* is also declined as if it were *hoch*; *e.g.*, *ein hoher Thurm*, a high tower.

† "Much," when used as an adverb expressing intensity, *e.g.*, "I like him much," is to be translated by *sehr*; but you should never use *sehr* with the comparative.

more in the third Section. The mode of repeating the comparative as *e.g.*, in phrases like, "he rose higher and higher," is used in German also. You may say, *er stieg höher und höher*; this is, however, a rather oratorical style of phrase; and in sober, plain speech it is better to use the form, *er stieg immer höher*.

*Remark 7.* The difference between the simple and the compound form of the superlative is this, that the simple superlative expresses the highest degree of comparison, and that the compound superlative expresses absolutely an eminent degree in general, without any reference to comparison. The compound superlative is formed by the combination of the adjective with adverbs like *höchst*, most highly, *äußerst*, extremely, and others of the same kind. We say,

*Der gelehrteste Mann seiner Zeit*, the most learned man of his age; but

*Ein höchst gelehrter Mann*, a most learned man.

*Er ist der tapferste von allen*, he is the bravest of all; but

*Er ist höchst tapfer*, he is most brave.

To express a degree, as it were, beyond the superlative, the simple form of the superlative is sometimes combined with *aller*, (gen. plur. of all); *e.g.*, *mein allerbesten Freund*, my very best friend.

*Remark 8.* As the undeclined form of the adjective in the positive, thus the undeclined form of the simple comparative is used as an adverb; *e.g.*,

*Die Lerche singt schön*, the lark sings beautifully;

*Die Nachtigall singt schöner*, the nightingale sings more beautifully.

*Remark 9.* The superlative of the adverb has two different forms:—

*a.* When there is a comparison, we say, *am besten*, *am schönsten* (instead of *an dem schönsten*, being the dative of *das schöne*, *e.g.* of the neuter of the adjective used as a substantive); *e.g.*,

*Die Drossel singt schön*, the thrush sings beautifully;

*die Lerche singt schöner*, the lark sings more beautifully;

*die Nachtigall singt am schönsten*, the nightingale sings most beautifully (of the three).

b. When there is no comparison, but only a most eminent degree in general, the superlative of the adverb is formed with the preposition *auf*, and the accusative of the neuter of the adjective in the superlative with the preceding definite article; *e.g.*,

*er hat mich auf das (auf's) freundlichste behandelt*, he has treated me in the kindest possible manner.

*Remark 10.* Some adjectives form an adverbial superlative (without comparison) by adding the termination *-enſt* to the single form: *e.g.*, *ſchönſtenſt*, in the most beautiful manner, *ſpäteſtenſt*, at the latest; they belong to the class of genitive adverbs, of which more will be said in the third Section.

*Remark 11.* The use of the undeclined simple form of the superlative as an adverb, is almost entirely restricted to the language of courtesy, in phrases, such as, *ich danke verbindlichſt*, I thank (you) most obligedly (kindly); *ich grüße dich herzlichſt*, I greet thee most heartily, etc.

### CHAPTER III.

#### DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

There are in German two distinct declensions of the substantive. The same substantive cannot be declined in different ways as the adjective is, but always retains the same declension.

##### ANCIENT, OR STRONG DECLENSION.\*

###### *Singular.*

- N. *der Sohn*, the son,  
*die Hand*, the hand,  
*der Bruder*, the brother.  
 G. *des Sohnes,† or Sohns*,  
*der Hand, des Bruders*.  
 D. *dem Sohne,† or Sohn*,  
*der Hand, dem Bruder*.  
 A. *den Sohn*,  
*die Hand, den Bruder*.

##### MODERN, OR WEAK DECLENSION.

###### *Singular.*

- N. *der Menſch*, the man,  
*der Haſe*, the hare,  
*die Hoffnung*, the hope.  
 G. *des Menſchen*,  
*des Haſen, der Hoffnung*.  
 D. *dem Menſchen*,  
*dem Haſen, der Hoffnung*.  
 A. *den Menſchen*,  
*den Haſen, die Hoffnung*.

*Mem.*—Observe that the substantives of the feminine gender are not declined in the singular.

\* For an explanation of the terms "ancient," and "strong," see the next chapter.

† It depends on considerations of euphony whether to drop or not, the *e* of the declensional ending of the genit. and dat. (singular). Nouns ending in *-el*, *-en*, *-er*, *-lein*, always drop it. See Remark 1.

## ANCIENT, OR STRONG DECLENSION.

*Plural.*

- N. die Söhne,  
die Söhne, die Brüder.  
G. der Söhne,  
der Söhne, der Brüder.  
D. den Söhnen,  
den Söhnen, den Brüdern.  
A. die Söhne,  
die Söhne, die Brüder.

## MODERN, OR WEAK DECLENSION.

*Plural.*

- N. die Menschen,  
die Menschen, die Hoffnungen.  
G. der Menschen,  
der Menschen, der Hoffnungen.  
D. den Menschen,  
den Menschen, den Hoffnungen.  
A. die Menschen,  
die Menschen, die Hoffnungen.

1. The plural of the German declension of the substantive never ends in -s, except in the case of words introduced into German from foreign languages without any alteration of spelling or pronunciation; *e.g.*, *der Eorb*, plur. *die Eorbs*; *das Xdagio*, plur. *die Xdagioß*. The English are often misled, in this respect, by the declension of their own language. The ending -s occurs in the regular German declension only in the genitive singular of the ancient declension of the masculine and neuter.

2. The dative plural of all declensions (articles, pronouns, adjectives, and substantives) ends in -n.

**Rule I.**—To the ancient declension belong:—**A.**—All the nouns masculine not ending in -e.

1. Some masculines which originally had the termination -e, but, in the course of time, have dropped it (*e.g.*, *der Bär*, the bear, instead of *der Bäre*; *der Fürst*, instead of *der Fürste*), belong to the modern declension. They are enumerated below in Rule II., A. 2.

2. Some masculines, originally ending in -en, have dropped the n in the nominative singular. They are declined in the ancient form, as if the n were not dropped. They are,—

Der Friede, the peace	der Name, the name
der Funke, the spark	der Same, the seed
der Gedanke, the thought	der Schade, the injury
der Glaube, the creed	der Wille, the will (volition)
der Haufe, the heap	der Buchstabe, the letter (in the alphabet).

You decline, *der Friede*, *des Friedens*, *dem Frieden*, *den Frieden*, etc.; and in the same way all the other nouns enumerated above.

**B.**—All the nouns of the feminine of originally not more than one syllable.**C.**—All the nouns of the neuter.

**Remark 1.** Nouns having the mute terminations -el, -en, -er, -lein, drop the e of the declensional ending; *e.g.*, *der Vogel*, the

bird; genitive *des Vogels* (not *Vogels*); plural *die Vögel* (not *Vögele*); *der Vater*, the father; genitive *des Vaters* (not *Vaters*); plural *die Väter* (not *Vätere*); and so also the rest. The nouns in *-en* and *-lein* do not take an additional *-n* in the dative plural; they simply make *e.g.*, *den Gärten*, *den Fräulein*.

*Remark 2.* Some nouns, mostly of the neuter gender, and also a few masculines add an *-r* to the ending *-e* of the plural; *e.g.*, *das Buch*, plural not *Büche*, but *Bücher*; *der Mann*, plural not *Männe*, but *Männer*. The *n* of the dative plural is superadded, *den Büchern*, *den Männern*. A complete list of all the nouns declined in this way is given below.

*Remark 3.* The radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are modified in the plural of the ancient declension into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*:—

- a.* by all the underived masculines with the exception of some, a list of which is given below;
- b.* by all the feminines belonging to the ancient declension;
- c.* by all the neuters alluded to in Remark 2. The rest of the neuters do not modify the vowel in the plural, except *das Kloster*, the convent (cloister), which makes *Klöster*. But you say, *das Pflaster*, the plaister; plural *die Pflaster*; *das Polster*, the bolster; plural *die Polster*; *das Muster*, the model; plural *die Muster*; (not *Pfläster*, *Pöflster*, *Müflster*).

*Rule II.*—To the modern declension belong:—

*A.*—All the masculines ending in *-e*.

1. The radical vowel remains, in this declension, unchanged in the plural:—*der Knabe*, the boy, plur. *die Knaben*, not *die Knäben*; *der Bote*, the messenger, plur. *die Boten*, not *die Böten*; *der Bube*, the knave, plur. *die Buben*, not *die Büben*.

2. The following nouns, having originally had the ending *-e*, but in the course of time dropped it, are likewise declined according to the modern form:—

*Der Bär*, the bear  
*der Fürst*, the prince  
*der Geck*, the fool  
*der Graf*, the earl  
*der Hagestolz*, the old bachelor  
*der Herr*, the gentleman  
*der Mensch*, the human being  
*der Mohr*, the negro

*der Narr*, the fool  
*der Schöps*, the sheep  
*der Strauß*, the ostrich  
*der Spatz*, the sparrow  
*der Thor*, the fool  
*der Vorfahr*, the ancestor  
*der Zack*, the point.

Der Bauer, the peasant (boor), and der Baier, the Bavarian, likewise belong to this class. These nouns were originally, der Baure, der Baire; they then dropped the ending *e*; after which, for easier pronunciation, they became der Bauer, der Baier. But they are declined as if they still had the ending *-e*:—*Der* Bauer, genit. *des* Bauern (instead of *Baueren*), plur. *die* Bauern; *der* Baier, genit. *des* Baiern, plur. *die* Baiern. This is one of the instances, where the exception proves the rule.

B.—All the feminines of more than one syllable.\*

*Exceptions*, to be declined according to the ancient form:—

die Mutter, plural die Mütter;

die Tochter, plural die Töchter.

The following feminines, nearly all of which originally had more than one syllable, but have become monosyllabic by contraction, are also declined according to the modern form:—

Die Art, the species	die Last, the burden	die Spur, the trace
die Bahn, the career	die List, the stratagem	die That, the deed
die Brut, the brood	die Pflicht, the duty	die Tracht, the costume
die Bucht, the bay	die Qual, the torment	die Trift, the pasture
die Fahrt, the journey	die Schaar, the troop	die Uhr, the watch
die Flur, the field	die Schlacht, the battle	die Wahl, the election
die Fluth, the flood	die Schlucht, the ravine	die Welt, the world
die Fracht, the freight	die Schrift, the writing	die Zahl, the number
die Gluth, the glow	die Schuld, the debt	die Zeit, the time
die Jagd, the chase	(also, the guilt)	die Bank,† the bank.

**Rule III.** The following substantives take the singular of the ancient, and the plural of the modern declension (*der* Ahn, gen. *des* Ahns, plur. *die* Ahnen):—

a. Masculines:—

Der Ahn, the ancestor	der Sporn, the spur (pl. <i>die</i> Sporen)
der Dorn, the thorn	der Staar, the starling
der Forst, the forest	der Staat, the state
der Geyatter, the gossip	der Stachel, the sting
der Lorbeer, the laurel	der Strahl, the ray
der Mast, the mast	der Unterthan, the subject (of a sovereign)
der Nachbar, the neighbour	der Vetter, the cousin
der Pantoffel, the slipper	der Zierrath, the ornament
der Pfau, the peacock	der Zins, the interest (paid on money).
der Schmerz, the pain	
der See, the lake	

\* As in German every letter is pronounced, nouns like Blume (flower), Farbe (colour), are to be considered as having two syllables, *Blu-me*, *Far-be*.

† Die Bank, meaning a bench, is declined according to the ancient form; its plural is, therefore, *die* Bänke.



*b. Neuters:—*

Das Auge, the eye  
 das Bett, the bed  
 das Ende, the end  
 das Hemd, the shirt

das Herz, the heart (gen. des Herzens,  
 dat. dem Herzen, plur. die Herzen)  
 das Leid, the sorrow  
 das Ohr, the ear  
 das Weh, the pain.

*List of nouns belonging to the Ancient Declension, adding t to the ending e of the plural (see Rule I., Rem. 2).*

Examples:—das Glas, plur. die Gläser; das Dorf, plur. die Dörfer;  
 das Buch, plur. die Bücher.

Das Aas, the carcase  
 das Amt, the office  
 das Bad, the bath  
 das Bild, the image  
 das Blatt, the leaf  
 das Brett, the shelf  
 das Buch, the book  
 das Band, the ribbon  
 das Dach, the roof  
 das Dorf, the village  
 das Ei, the egg  
 das Fach, the compartment  
 das Faß, the cask  
 das Feld, the field  
 das Geld, the money  
 das Glas, the glass  
 das Glied, the limb  
 das Grab, the grave  
 das Gras, the grass  
 das Gut, the good  
 das Haupt, the head  
 das Haus, the house  
 das Holz, the wood

das Horn, the horn  
 das Huhn, the fowl  
 das Kalb, the calf  
 das Kind, the child  
 das Kleid, the garment  
 das Korn, the grain  
 das Kraut, the herb  
 das Lamm, the lamb  
 das Licht, the light  
 das Loch, the hole  
 das Maul, the mouth (of an animal)  
 das Nest, the nest  
 das Pfand, the pledge  
 das Rad, the wheel  
 das Schloß, the castle  
 das Schwert, the sword  
 das Thal, the dale  
 das Tuch, the cloth  
 das Volk, the people  
 das Wams, the jerkin  
 das Weib, the woman  
 das Wort, the word.\*

Das Gemach, the apartment  
 das Gewand, the garment  
 das Gesicht, the face

das Gemüth, the mind  
 das Geschlecht, the sex, the family  
 das Gespenst, the spectre.

\* When meaning the words as forming part of a language, *e.g.*, in a dictionary (*Wörterbuch*), *Wort* makes in the plural *Wörter*; when meaning words as constituting a sentence, *Worte*.

Der Gott, the god	der Wald, the forest
der Geist, the spirit (ghost)	der Wurm, the worm;
der Leib, the body	and all the nouns masculine and
der Mann, the man	neuter ending in -thum; e. g.,
der Rand, the edge	der Reichthum, the wealth
der Vormund, the guardian	das Bisthum, the bishopric.

*List of the nouns masculine belonging to the Ancient Declension, which do not modify their radical vowel in the plural (see Rule I., Rem. 3. a).*

Der Aal, the eel	der Hund, the dog
der Adler, the eagle	der Laut, the sound
der Abend, the evening	der Leichnam, the corpse
der Adler, the eagle	der Luchs, the lynx
der Amboss, the anvil	der Molch, the newt
der Arm, the arm	der Ort, the place *
der Docht, the wick	der Mond, the moon, or month
der Dolch, the dagger	der Monat, the month
der Dorsch, the haddock	der Pfad, the path
der Eidam, the son-in-law	der Salm, the salmon
der Gemahl, the husband	der Schacht, the shaft
der Habicht, the hawk	der Schuh, the shoe
der Halm, the haulm	der Stoff, the stuff
der Herzog, the duke	der Tag, the day
der Huf, the hoof	der Zoll, the inch.

Halm, plur. Halme, not Hälme.

Dolch, plur. Dolche, not Dölche.

Hund, plur. Hunde, not Hünde;

and so the rest.

### *Additional Remarks.*

*Additional Remark 1.* Proper names have a sort of irregular declension, composed of both forms, the ancient, and the modern, without distinction of gender. Those ending in a consonant (except *ß* and *ß*), or also in a vowel, which is not changed from its original form, merely add in the genitive *s*; e. g.,

\* Ort, meaning a place, a spot, makes in the plur. Orte; meaning a village, it makes Dörter. In the latter meaning it is generally used as a neuter.

N. Heinrich.	Gertrud.	Martha.
G. Heinrichs.	Gertruds.	Marthas.
D. Heinrich.	Gertrud.	Martha.
A. Heinrich.	Gertrud.	Martha.

Those ending in *ß* and *z*, and those feminine names, in which the original ending *-a*, or *-ia*, has been changed into *e* and *ie* (Elise from Elisa, Marie from Maria), make *-ens* in the genitive, and *-en* in the dative; *e. g.*,

N. Heinz (Harry).	Marie.
G. Heizens.	Mariens.
D. Heinz.	Marien.
A. Heinz.	Marie.

As to those ending in *-uß*, or *-es*, or *-as*, *e. g.*, Julius, Moses, Elias, it is better not to decline them at all, but to use the article for the genitive, which is generally done with all proper names, whenever their declension presents any difficulty; thus you would say, *Die Gemälde des Velasquez*, the paintings of Velasquez; *der Mord des Pertinax*, the murder of Pertinax.

It is necessary to mention the declension of proper names, as it was much more extensively used in the last century than it is now; the style of the present day confines the declension of the proper names almost entirely to the genitive, leaving the dative unchanged; *e. g.*, *Ich habe Marie* (instead of *Marien*) *ein Buch gegeben*, I have given a book to Mary. In the last century, the golden age of modern German literature, not only the dative, but also the accusative of the proper names were declined. Scripture names, in Luther's translation of the Bible, in devotional books and sermons, and in marking the days of the calendar, are generally declined as in Latin; *e. g.*, *Jesu*, *Jesu*, *Jesu*, *Jesum*; *Christu*, *Christi*, *Christo*, *Christum*; thus we say, *die Gnade unseres Herrn Jesu Christi*, the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ; *die Offenbarung Johann's* (gen. of *Johannes*), the Revelation of John; *Maria Himmelfahrt*, the Assumption of the Virgin Mary.

**Additional Remark 2.** All names—though they may consist of several words or names—and likewise names with titles preceding them, are considered as one noun; and, consequently, take once only the termination of the declension:—

*a.* When a simple surname is joined to one or more Christian names, the surname alone takes the termination of the declension:—*die Werke Otfried Müllers*, the works of Otfried Müller.

*b.* When the simple surname is preceded by a title, either the title alone is declined, and, in this case, must be combined with

the article; or the surname is declined, and the title remains undeclined, except *Herr*, which is declined also in this position.

N. der Graf Egmont. Graf Egmont. der Herr Maier. Herr Maier.  
 G. des Grafen Egmont. Graf Egmonts. des Herrn Maier. Herrn Maiers.  
 D. dem Grafen Egmont. Graf Egmont. dem Herrn Maier. Herrn Maier.  
 A. den Grafen Egmont. Graf Egmont. den Herrn Maier. Herrn Maier.

c. When the family-name is derived from a country or an estate, the name of which latter is then generally combined with *von*, *e.g.*, Franz von Sickingen, Francis of Sickingen (as in Scotland it might be said, the laird of Bradwardine), the Christian name only takes the termination of the declension; thus, die Briefe Ulrichs von Hutten; der Sohn Friedrich Augusts von Sachsen.

*Additional Remark 3.* Of the nouns introduced from foreign languages into German, the following list comprises the most important only; but it will suffice as a guide to find the declension of the rest.

#### A.—Ancient Declension.

a. With modification of vowel (where there are two or more syllables, the vowel of the second only is modified):—

Der Altar, the altar	der Kardinal, the cardinal
der Abt, the abbot	der Marsch, the marsh
der Bischof, the bishop	der Morast, the morass
der Chor, the chorus	der Marschall, the marshal *
der Choral, the sacred hymn	der Papst, the pope
der Kanal, the canal	der Palast, the palace
der Kaplan, the chaplain	der Probst, the provost.

Das Hospital; plur. die Hospitäler.

b. Without modification of vowel:—

Der Admiral, the admiral	der Notar, the notary
der General, the general	der Actuar, the actuary
der Corporal, the corporal	(and all similar nouns, taken from
der Pokal, the tankard	Latin nouns, ending in <i>-arius</i> );
der Offizier, the officer	das Lokal, the locality
der Major, the major	das Tribunal, the tribunal
der Spion, the spy	das Mikroskop, the microscope
der Patron, the patron	das Teleskop, the telescope.

Das Regiment, the regiment, plur. die Regimenter.

\* Introduced from German into French, and re-introduced from French into German.

B.—*Modern Declension.*

All the feminines; and, besides, all the masculines taken from Latin and Greek, with the ending,

- a. -at (from *-atus*): *Advocat*, *Prälat*;
- b. -ent or -ant (from *-ens* or *-ans*): *Regent*, *Protestant*;
- c. -log or -gog (from the Greek *-logos* or *-gogos*): *Theolog*, *Pädagog*;
- d. -it or -ist or -ast (from *-ita* or *-ista*): *Jesuit*, *Jurist*, *Enthusiast*;

in short, all those nouns in which the Latin or Greek ending is dropped, the accent in German being put on the last syllable; *e.g.*, *Prophet*, from *propheta*; *Philosoph*, from *philosophus*; *Katholik*, from *catholicus*. These nouns are to be treated like those which have dropped the ending -e (see Rule II. a., Mem. 2), and yet are declined in the modern form.

C.—*Making the singular in the Ancient, and the plural in the Modern Form.*

- a. All nouns taken from Latin, with the ending -or\*; *e.g.*,  
N. der Rektor, G. des Rektors, D. dem Rektor, A. den Rektor;  
Plur. die Rektoren.
- b. All neuters, with the Latin ending -ium or -ale; *e.g.*,  
das Privilegium, gen. des Privilegiums; plur. die Privilegien;  
das Mineral (the ending -e being dropped), gen. des Minerals;  
plur. die Mineralien;  
das Kapital (money), gen. des Kapitals; plur. die Kapitalien;  
das Kleinod (in mediæval Latin, *clenodium*), gen. des Kleinods;  
plur. die Kleinodien.

*Additional Remark 4.* The names of some Roman and Greek authors are used in German in an abridged form; but there is, in this respect, a difference between the German and English usage. A rule cannot be given, as this is a practice regulated only by the fashion of the day. The example of the greatest writers on classical lore and history may be quoted in favour of always giving the Roman and Greek names in their unabridged and unaltered form, even so far as to leave the original Greek ending -os (*Homeros*, *Hesiodos*), instead of changing it into -us; and also to spell,

---

\* "Der Major" seems to be taken from the French.

Thucydides, Phosion, etc. — It will, therefore, be advisable for the English student of German, in case of doubt, as a safe expedient to employ the original Latin or Greek form. The following hints may, likewise, be acceptable :—

Never abridge the names of—

Livius, Plinius, Antonius, Polybius, Tacitus, Aeschylus, Josephus (Flavius).

It is customary, although, for the reasons mentioned above, not exactly necessary, to use the following abridgments:—

Homer, Hesiod, Herodot, Euclid, Aesop, Arrian, Plutarch  
Virgil, Ovid, Horaz, Catull, Tibull, Juvenal, Sallu ft  
Martial, Terenz.

All others, as the fashion is now, had better be used in the original unabridged form. It is to be remarked, that in German the accent lies on the last syllable of all these abridgments, even of “Virgil,” and “Ovid,” in which, according to Latin prosody, that syllable ought to be pronounced short.

*Additional Remark 5.* The English, besides corrupting German as well as other foreign names themselves, are in the habit of using the French nomenclature not only for towns which, being unfortunately lost to Germany, have adopted a Frenchified name; as, *e.g.*, Thionville (*Diedenhofen*), or Nancy (*Nantzig*); but also for towns which, politically and nationally, belong to Germany, and where the language spoken by the people is as German, as the language of the city of London is English. It may, therefore, be just as well to point out here the German names of some of the principal towns thus mis-named:—

Nachen, Aix-la-Chapelle	Zweibrücken, Deux-	Süllich, Juliers
Rölin, Cologne	Ponts	Trier, Treves
Roßlenz, Coblenze	München, Munich	Braunschweig, Brunswick
Rainz, Mayence	Wien, Vienna	Nürnberg, Nuremberg
	Regensburg, Ratisbon (from Latin).	

The German name for Blenheim is *Blindheim*; the battle, however, is called the battle of *Schiffardt*, which name may be taken as an illustration of how necessary it is in German to distinguish the modified form of the vowel from the simple. The town in Bavaria, or rather Swabia, where the famous battle was fought, is *Schiffardt*; there is another town in Franconia, *Schiffardt*; and several other towns named *Schiffardt*. If you are in doubt about any name, you had best consult the dictionary, where, at least in this respect, you will generally find what you want.

## IRREGULAR DECLENSIONS.

*Singular.*

Nom.	der Fels, the rock.	das Herz, the heart.
Gen.	des Felsens.	des Herzens.
Dat.	dem Felsen, or Fels.	dem Herzen.
Acc.	den Felsen, or Fels.	das Herz.

*Plural.*

die Felsen.	die Herzen.
etc., etc.	etc., etc.

Some nouns, compounded with *Mann* in the last syllable, make their plural in *-leute*, others in *-männer*. To the former class belong those which denote a trade, profession, or rank; *e. g.*,

*Seemann*, sailor, plur. *Seeleute*; *Kaufmann*, merchant, plur. *Kaufleute*; *Hauptmann*, captain, plur. *Hauptleute*.

To the class which make *-männer* in the plural, belong those which convey a description of character rather than of station; *e. g.*,

*der Staatsmann*, the statesman, plur. *die Staatsmänner*;  
*der Ehrenmann*, the man of honour; plur. *die Ehrenmänner*.

The difference may best be shown by the noun *Hofmann*, courtier. Speaking of courtiers in their official station, *e. g.*, "the Queen and all her courtiers," we should say, *die Königin und alle ihre Hofleute*. On the other hand, we should translate, "Prince Kaunitz and Prince Metternich were both of them accomplished courtiers," by, *Fürst Kaunitz und Fürst Metternich waren beide vollendete Hofmänner*. — *Ehmann*, husband, makes *Ehmänner*; *Ehleute* means, married couples.

All other compound nouns take the declension of that noun which stands last; *e. g.*, *der Hausvater*, plur. *die Hausväter*; *das Waterhaus*, plur. *die Waterhäuser*.

## CHAPTER IV.

## CONJUGATION.

The English student will find the less difficulty in learning the German conjugation, as the principles, on which it is formed, are nearly akin to those of his own language. The whole of the German conjugation consists, properly speaking, of —

1. the infinitive,
2. the participles,
  - a. present,
  - b. past,
3. the imperative.
4. the present, and
5. the imperfect tenses, of the active voice.

All the rest of the active voice, and the whole of the passive are formed, as they are in English, by the combination of the participles or infinitives with a conjugated tense of one of the auxiliary verbs.

A.—CONJUGATION OF THE TWO PRINCIPAL AUXILIARY  
VERBS **seyn**\* AND **haben**.

## INFINITIVE.

*Present.*

a. Direct.	seyn,	} to be.	haben,	} to have.
b. Indirect.	zu seyn,		zu haben,	

*Past.*

a. Direct.	gewesen seyn,	} to have been.	gehabt haben,	} to have had.
b. Indirect.	gewesen zu seyn,		gehabt zu haben,	

## PARTICIPLES.

a. Present.	sehend† (not used), being.	habend (not used), having.
b. Past.	gewesen, been.	gehabt, had.

\* This verb is now generally spelled, *sein*; the old spelling has been retained in this Grammar, to prevent the infinitive *seyn*, from being mistaken for the possessive pronoun *sein*. For uniformity's sake the spelling, *seyn*, *seyft*, etc., has likewise been adhered to.

† The form *wesend* is used only as an adjective, compound with *an-* and *ab-*; *anwesend*, meaning present, and *abwesend*, absent.



*Direct, or Indicative Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich bin, I am.	ich habe, I have.
2nd p. du bist, thou art.	du hast, thou hast.
3rd p. er ist, he is.	er hat, he has.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir sind, we are.	wir haben, we have.
2nd p. ihr seyd, you are.	ihr habet, you have.
3rd p. sie sind, they are.	sie haben, they have.

## RELATIVE PAST, OR IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich war, I was.	ich hatte, I had.
2nd p. du warst, thou wast.	du hattest, thou hadst.
3rd p. er war, he was.	er hatte, he had.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir waren, we were.	wir hatten, we had.
2nd p. ihr waret, you were.	ihr hattet, you had.
3rd p. sie waren, they were.	sie hatten, they had.

## ABSOLUTE PAST, OR PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich bin gewesen, I have been.	ich habe gehabt, I have had.
2nd p. du bist gewesen, thou hast been.	du hast gehabt, thou hast had.
3rd p. er ist gewesen, he has been.	er hat gehabt, he has had.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir sind gewesen, we have been.	wir haben gehabt, we have had.
2nd p. ihr seyd gewesen, you have been.	ihr habet gehabt, you have had.
3rd p. sie sind gewesen, they have been.	sie haben gehabt, they have had.

## ANTERIOR PAST, OR PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich war gewesen, I had been.	ich hatte gehabt, I had had.
2nd p. du warst gewesen, thou hadst been.	du hattest gehabt, thou hadst had.
3rd p. er war gewesen, he had been.	er hatte gehabt, he had had.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir waren gewesen, we had been.	wir hatten gehabt, we had had.
2nd p. ihr waret gewesen, you had been.	ihr hattet gehabt, you had had.
3rd p. sie waren gewesen, they had been.	sie hatten gehabt, they had had.

## FIRST FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde seyn, I shall be.	ich werde haben, I shall have.
2nd p. du wirst seyn, thou wilt be.	du wirst haben, thou wilt have.
3rd p. er wird seyn, he will be.	er wird haben, he will have.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden seyn, we shall be.	wir werden haben, we shall have.
2nd p. ihr werdet seyn, you will be.	ihr werdet haben, you will have.
3rd p. sie werden seyn, they will be.	sie werden haben, they will have.

## SECOND FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde	} gewesen seyn	} I shall thou wilt he will	} have been.	ich werde	} gehabt haben	} I shall thou wilt he will	} have had.
2nd p. du wirst				du wirst			
3rd p. er wird				er wird			

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden	} gewesen seyn	} we shall you will they will	} have been.	wir werden	} gehabt haben	} we shall you will they will	} have had.
2nd p. ihr werdet				ihr werdet			
3rd p. sie werden				sie werden			

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich sey, (that) I be.*	ich habe, (that) I have.
2nd p. du seyst, (that) thou be.	du habest, (that) thou have.
3rd p. er sey, (that) he be.	er habe, (that) he have.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir seyen, (that) we be.	wir haben, (that) we have.
2nd p. ihr seyet, (that) you be.	ihr habet, (that) you have.
3rd p. sie seyen, (that) they be.	sie haben, (that) they have.

---

\* There being no conjugation of the subjunctive corresponding in every respect to the German, the translation given with the tenses should not be considered as binding.

## IMPERFECT, OR PRESENT CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich wäre, I were.	ich hätte, I had.
2nd p. du wärest, thou wert.	du hättest, thou hadst.
3rd p. er wäre, he were.	er hätte, he had.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir wären, we were.	wir hätten, we had.
2nd p. ihr wäret, you were.	ihr hättet, you had.
3rd p. sie wären, they were.	sie hätten, they had.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich sey gewesen, I have been.	ich habe gehabt, I have had.
2nd p. du seyst gewesen, thou have been.	du habest gehabt, thou have had.
3rd p. er sey gewesen, he have been.	er habe gehabt, he have had.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir seyen gewesen, we have been.	wir haben gehabt, we have had.
2nd p. ihr seyet gewesen, you have been.	ihr habet gehabt, you have had.
3rd p. sie seyen gewesen, they have been.	sie haben gehabt, they have had.

## PLUPERFECT, OR CONDITIONAL PAST.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich wäre	} <i>gewesen</i>	I should	} <i>haben</i>	ich hätte	} <i>gehabt</i>	I should
2nd p. du wärest		thou wouldst		du hättest		thou wouldst
3rd p. er wäre		he would		er hätte		he would

*Plural.*

1st p. wir wären	} <i>gewesen</i>	we should	} <i>haben</i>	wir hätten	} <i>gehabt</i>	we should	} <i>haben</i>
2nd p. ihr wäret		you should		ihr hättet		you should	
3rd p. sie wären		they should		sie hätten		they should	

## FIRST FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde seyn, (that) I shall be.	ich werde haben, (that) I shall have.
2nd p. du werdest seyn, (that) thou wilt be.	du werdest haben, (that) thou wilt have.
3rd p. er werde seyn, (that) he will be.	er werde haben, (that) he will have.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden seyn, (that)	we shall be.	wir werden haben, (that)	we shall have.
2nd p. ihr werdet seyn, (that)	you will be.	ihr werdet haben, (that)	you will have.
3rd p. sie werden seyn, (that)	they will be.	sie werden haben, (that)	they will have.

## SECOND FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde gewesen seyn, (that)	I shall have been.	ich werde gehabt haben, (that)	I shall have had.
2nd p. du werdest gewesen seyn, (that)	thou wilt have been.	du wirst gehabt haben, (that)	thou wilt have had.
3rd p. er werde gewesen seyn, (that)	he will have been.	er wird gehabt haben, (that)	he will have had.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden gewesen seyn, (that)	we shall have been.	wir werden gehabt haben, (that)	we shall have had.
2nd p. ihr werdet gewesen seyn, (that)	you will have been.	ihr werdet gehabt haben, (that)	you will have had.
3rd p. sie werden gewesen seyn, (that)	they will have been.	sie werden gehabt haben, (that)	they will have had.

## FIRST FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich würde seyn, I should be.	ich würde haben, I should have.
2nd p. du würdest seyn, thou wouldst be.	du würdest haben, thou wouldst have.
3rd p. er würde seyn, he would be.	er würde haben, he would have.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir würden seyn, we should be.	wir würden haben, we should have.
2nd p. ihr würdet seyn, you would be.	ihr würdet haben, you would have.
3rd p. sie würden seyn, they would be.	sie würden haben, they would have.

## SECOND FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich würde gewesen seyn, I should have been.	ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had.
2nd p. du würdest gewesen seyn, thou wouldst have been.	du würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst have had.
3rd p. er würde gewesen seyn, he would have been.	er würde gehabt haben, he would have had.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir würden gewesen seyn, we should have been.	wir würden gehabt haben, we should have had.
2nd p. ihr würdet gewesen seyn, you would have been.	ihr würdet gehabt haben, you would have had.
3rd p. sie würden gewesen seyn, they would have been.	sie würden gehabt haben, they would have had.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.*

2nd p. sey (du), be (thou).	habe (du), have (thou).
3rd p. sey er, let him be.	habe er, let him have.

*Plural.*

1st p. seyn wir, let us be.	haben wir, let us have.
2nd p. seyb (ihr), be (ye).	habet (ihr), have (ye).
3rd p. seyn sie,* let them be.	haben sie,* let them have.

*Remark 1.* It will have been seen that the compound tenses—the perfect, pluperfect, first and second Future; and first and second future conditional—are formed in the main by the same combinations with auxiliary verbs, as in English; with this difference only that the verb *seyn* is employed, instead of *haben*, as auxiliary verb for its own perfect and pluperfect tenses (*ich bin gewesen*, “I am been,” instead of “I have been,” and likewise, *ich war gewesen*, “I was been,” instead of “I had been”). These combinations are formed on exactly the same principles in all the other verbs, *seyn* being employed as the auxiliary verb of the past tenses with the neuter, and *haben* with the transitive verbs. The rule is therefore, that the compound tenses of verbs are formed:—

- a. The perfect with the conjugated present tense, and the pluperfect with the conjugated tense of respectively *seyn* or *haben*, preceding the participle past of the verb to be conjugated.

---

\* When the third person plural, as explained before, is used in courteous address instead of the second person singular or plural, *sie* is to be spelled with a capital *S*. The pronoun *Sie* can, in these instances, never be dispensed with; as otherwise the imperative could not be distinguished from the infinitive.

*Examples.*

Neuter Verb:—*gehen*, to go (partic. past *gegangen*). Perfect, *ich bin gegangen*. Pluperfect, *ich war gegangen*.

Transitive Verb:—*fragen*, to ask (partic. past *gefragt*). Perfect, *ich habe gefragt*. Pluperfect, *ich hatte gefragt*.

- b. The future tense of all verbs with the conjugated present tense (the future conditional with the imperfect subjunctive) of *werden*, preceding in the first future and first future conditional the infinitive present, and in the second future and second future conditional the infinitive past of the verb to be conjugated.

*Examples.*

First Future, and Future Conditional:

*Ich werde gehen. Ich würde gehen.*

*Ich werde fragen. Ich würde fragen.*

Second Future, and Future Conditional:

*Ich werde gegangen seyn. Ich würde gegangen seyn.*

*Ich werde gefragt haben. Ich würde gefragt haben.*

*Remark 2.* It is not necessary in this place to give the conjugation of *werden*, the third principal auxiliary verb, as it will have to be introduced in all its tenses with the conjugation of the passive voice.

## B.—CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS PROPER.

There are two conjugations of the verbs proper\* :—

1. The verbs of ancient or strong form.
2. The verbs of modern or weak form.

The terms “ancient,” and “modern,” † as applied to declension and conjugation have this meaning, that the ancient declensions

\* Verbs not auxiliary.

† In the grammars of bygone days, the ancient conjugation used to be treated as irregular; but the division of the declension and conjugation into the ancient and modern, or weak and strong, is the correct and scientific one. In the German grammars, written for Germans, these different

and conjugations date from an earlier age of the language; in fact, from the time when German, and Anglo-Saxon, the parent of the present English vernacular, were not yet divided, but only dialects of the same tongue. The modern declensions and conjugations, on the other hand, are of later growth. The import of the terms "strong" and "weak," is this, that the strong declensions and conjugations are formed, as it were, from within their own roots, either by change or modification of the radical vowel, or by an array of additional syllables which show by their variety that the vitality of the word, that is to say, its power of being reproduced in new forms is not extinct.

In the weak declensions and conjugations, the radical vowel is not changed; it is, as it were, dead; and the declension and conjugation is effected mechanically by additions which prove by their want of variety that the vitality of the word itself is extinct. The same distinction between ancient and modern, strong and weak declensions and conjugations, is to be recognized in the English language, as will presently be shown by examples.

Of the declension of the ancient form, a few samples only have survived in the English language; but they are sufficient still to mark the difference between ancient and modern, and also the original similarity of the principles of German and English grammar. They are the substantives, "man," "foot," "tooth," "goose," "mouse." These nouns do not form their plural by adding the ending -s, as is done in the modern English declension, but by changing their radical vowel: "man" making in the plural "men"; "foot," "feet"; "tooth," "teeth"; "goose," "geese"; "mouse," "mice." In the same way, of the German correspond-words: Mann, makes in the plural Männer; Fuß, Füße; Zahn, Zähne; Gans, Gänse; Maus, Mäuse. On the other hand, the noun, Ochse, ox, may be quoted as an example occurring in both

---

terms are very properly applied also to the declension of the article and the adjective. They have in this grammar been exchanged with regard to the two last-mentioned declensions for the terms "articular," "complete" and "incomplete" declension, in order the more strictly to distinguish between the declension of the article, of the adjective, and of the substantive, so as to prevent the English student from the very frequent mistake of confounding the articular declension with that of the substantive.

languages with the same form of the modern declension, the radical vowel *o* remaining unchanged, and the ending *-en*, being added, in German throughout the declension:—*Ochsen*; in English in the plural:—*oxen*.

The conformity of the two languages with regard to the division of their conjugation into ancient and modern is even more striking and comprehensive. Premising, that in English, as well as in German, the infinitive, the imperfect, and the participle past are the three principal constituents, by which to distinguish the class to which the verb belongs, let us compare the verb *geben*, to give, with *leben*, to live. In both languages, these verbs are similar to each other in the infinitive, but in both of them, *geben*, to give, belongs to the ancient, and *leben*, to live, to the modern form.

I.—Now, the ancient conjugation is formed in German:—

- a. The imperfect, by reducing the verb to its root (*-en* being the conjugational ending added to the root in the infinitive of all verbs), and by changing the radical vowel according to certain types.
- b. The participle past, by adding the prefix *ge-*, and the ending *-en* to the root with or without change of the radical vowel.

II.—The modern conjugation is formed without any change whatever of its radical vowel:—

- a. The imperfect by adding to the root\* the ending *-te*, (*-ete*).
- b. The participle past by adding to the root the prefix *ge-*, and the ending *-t*, (*-et*).

	INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PARTIC. PAST.
I.— <i>Ancient form</i> :—	<i>geben</i> ,	( <i>ich</i> ) <i>gab</i> ;	<i>gegeben</i> .
	to give,	(I) <i>gave</i> ,	<i>given</i> .
II.— <i>Modern form</i> :—	<i>leben</i> ,	( <i>ich</i> ) <i>lebte</i> ,	<i>gelebt</i> .
	to live,	(I) <i>lived</i> ,	<i>lived</i> .

\* "Root" means here the radical portion of the verb, not the original root. Thus, in the verb of modern form *flücht-en*; *flücht-* would have to be considered as the radical syllable in contradistinction to the syllables added by way of conjugation. This radical syllable *flücht-* is, however, itself derived from the substantive *Flucht*, and this again from the verb of ancient form *flieh-en*, which is the original root. The verbs of the ancient form only contain true roots.



These three principal constituents exhibit the general distinguishing features of the two forms. The different classes of the ancient conjugation will be enumerated below. Referring once more to what has been stated in the Preliminary Chapter, we now proceed to give to two forms of the conjugation.

ANCIENT CONJUGATION.      MODERN CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INFINITIVE.

*Present.*

<i>a. Direct.</i> finden,	} to find.	fragen,	} to ask.
<i>b. Indirect.</i> zu finden,		zu fragen,	

*Past.*

<i>a. Direct.</i> gefunden haben,	} to have	gefragt haben,	} to have
<i>b. Indirect.</i> gefunden zu haben,		gefragt zu haben,	

PARTICIPLE.

<i>a. Present.</i> findend, finding.	fragend, asking.
<i>b. Past.</i> gefunden, found.	gefragt, asked.

*Direct, or Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich finde, I find.	ich frage, I ask.
2nd p. du findest, thou findest.	du fragst, thou askest.
3rd p. er findet, he finds.	er fragt, he asks.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir finden, we find.	wir fragen, we ask.
2nd p. ihr findet, you find.	ihr fraget, you ask.
3rd p. sie finden, they find.	sie fragen, they ask.

RELATIVE PAST, OR PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich fand, I found.	ich fragte, I asked.
2nd p. du fandest, thou foundst.	du fragtest, thou askedst.
3rd p. er fand, he found.	er fragte, he asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir fanden, we found.	wir fragten, we asked.
2nd p. ihr fandet, you found.	ihr fragtet, you asked.
3rd p. sie fanden, they found.	sie fragten, they asked.

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Direct, or Indicative Mood.*

## ABSOLUTE PAST, OR PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich habe gefunden, I have found.	ich habe gefragt, I have asked.
2nd p. du hast gefunden, thou hast found.	du hast gefragt, thou hast asked.
3rd p. er hat gefunden, he has found.	er hat gefragt, he has asked.

*Plural.*

1 s . wir haben gefunden, we have found.	wir haben gefragt, we have asked.
2nd p. ihr habet gefunden, you have found.	ihr habet gefragt, you have asked.
3rd p. sie haben gefunden, they have found.	sie haben gefragt, they have asked.

## ANTERIOR PAST, OR PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich hatte gefunden, I had found.	ich hatte gefragt, I had asked.
2nd p. du hättest gefunden, thou hadst found.	du hättest gefragt, thou hadst asked.
3rd p. er hatte gefunden, he had found.	er hatte gefragt, he had asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir hatten gefunden, we had found.	wir hatten gefragt, we had asked.
2nd p. ihr hättet gefunden, you had found.	ihr hättet gefragt, you had asked.
3rd p. sie hatten gefunden, they had found.	sie hatten gefragt, they had asked.

## FIRST FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde finden, I shall find.	ich werde fragen, I shall ask.
2nd p. du wirst finden, thou wilt find.	du wirst fragen, thou wilt ask.
3rd p. er wird finden, he will find.	er wird fragen, he will ask.

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Direct, or Indicative Mood.**Plural.*

1st p. wir werden finden, we shall find.	wir werden fragen, we shall ask.
2nd p. ihr werdet finden, you will find.	ihr werdet fragen, you will ask.
3rd p. sie werden finden, they will find.	sie werden fragen, they will ask.

## SECOND FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde gefunden haben, I shall have found.	ich werde gefragt haben, I shall have asked.
2nd p. du wirst gefunden haben, thou wilt have found.	du wirst gefragt haben, thou wilt have asked.
3rd p. er wird gefunden haben, he will have found.	er wird gefragt haben, he will have asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden gefunden haben, we shall have found.	wir werden gefragt werden, we shall have asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet gefunden haben, you will have found.	ihr werdet gefragt haben, you will have asked.
3rd p. sie werden gefunden haben, they will have found.	sie werden gefragt haben, they will have asked.

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.*

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich finde, (that) I find.	ich frage, (that) I ask.
2nd p. du findest, (that) thou findest.	du fragest, (that) thou askest.
3rd p. er finde, (that) he find.	er frage, (that) he ask.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir finden, (that) we find.	wir fragen, (that) we ask.
2nd p. ihr findet, (that) you find.	ihr fraget, (that) you ask.
3rd p. sie finden, (that) they find.	sie fragen, (that) they ask.

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.*

## IMPERFECT, OR PRESENT CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich fände, I found.	ich fragte, I asked.
2nd p. du fändest, thou found.	du fragtest, thou asked.
3rd p. er fände, he found.	er fragte, he asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir fänden, we found.	wir fragten, we asked.
2nd p. ihr fändet, you found.	ihr fragtet, you asked.
3rd p. sie fänden, they found.	sie fragten, they asked.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich habe gefunden, I have found.	ich habe gefragt, I have asked.
2nd p. du habest gefunden, thou have found.	du habest gefragt, thou have asked.
3rd p. er habe gefunden, he have found.	er habe gefragt, he have asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir haben gefunden, we have found.	wir haben gefragt, we have asked.
2nd p. ihr habet gefunden, you have found.	ihr habet gefragt, you have asked.
3rd p. sie haben gefunden, they have found.	sie haben gefragt, they have asked.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE, OR PAST CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich hätte gefunden, I had found.	ich hätte gefragt, I had asked.
2nd p. du hättest gefunden, thou had found.	du hättest gefragt, thou had asked.
3rd p. er hätte gefunden, he had found.	er hätte gefragt, he had asked.

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.**Plural.*

1st p. wir hätten gefunden, we had found.	wir hätten gefragt, we had asked.
2nd p. ihr hättet gefunden, you had found.	ihr hättet gefragt, you had asked.
3rd p. sie hätten gefunden, they had found.	sie hätten gefragt, they had asked.

## FIRST FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde finden, (that) I shall find.	ich werde fragen, (that) I shall ask.
2nd p. du werdest finden, (that) thou wilt find.	du werdest fragen, (that) thou wilt ask.
3rd p. er werde finden, (that) he will find.	er werde fragen, (that) he will ask.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden finden, (that) we shall find.	wir werden fragen, (that) we shall ask.
2nd p. ihr werdet finden, (that) you will find.	ihr werdet fragen, (that) you will ask.
3rd p. sie werden finden, (that) they will find.	sie werden fragen, (that) they will ask.

## SECOND FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde gefunden haben, I shall have found.	ich werde gefragt haben, I shall have asked.
2nd p. du werdest gefunden haben, thou wilt have found.	du werdest gefragt haben, thou wilt have asked.
3rd p. er werde gefunden haben, he will have found.	er werde gefragt haben, he will have asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden gefunden haben, we shall have found.	wir werden gefragt haben, we shall have asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet gefunden haben, you will have found.	ihr werdet gefragt haben, you will have asked.
3rd p. sie werden gefunden haben, they will have found.	sie werden gefragt haben, they will have asked.

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.*

## FIRST FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich würde finden, I should find.	ich würde fragen, I should ask.
2nd p. du würdest finden, thou wouldst find.	du würdest fragen, thou wouldst ask.
3rd p. er würde finden, he would find.	er würde fragen, he would ask.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir würden finden, we should find.	wir würden fragen, we should ask.
2nd p. ihr würdet finden, you would find.	ihr würdet fragen, you would ask.
3rd p. sie würden finden, they would find.	sie würden fragen, they would ask.

## SECOND FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich würde gefunden haben, I should have found.	ich würde gefragt haben, I should have asked.
2nd p. du würdest gefunden haben, thou wouldst have found.	du würdest gefragt haben, thou wouldst have asked.
3rd p. er würde gefunden haben, he would have found.	er würde gefragt haben, he would have asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir würden gefunden haben, we should have found.	wir würden gefragt haben, we should have asked.
2nd p. ihr würdet gefunden haben, you would have found.	ihr würdet gefragt haben, you would have asked.
3rd p. sie würden gefunden haben, they would have found.	sie würden gefragt haben, they would have asked.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.*

2nd p. finde (du), find (thou).	2nd p. frage (du), ask (thou).
3rd p. finde er, let him find.	3rd p. frage er, let him ask.

*Plural.*

1st p. finden wir, let us find.	fragen wir, let us ask.
2nd p. findet (ihr), find you.	fraget (ihr), ask (you).
3rd p. finden sie,* let them find.	fragen sie,* let them ask.

\* Remember that the third person plural is used, in courteous style, instead of the second person singular or plural. See Chapter I.

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INFINITIVE.

*Present.*

<i>a. Direct.</i> gefunden werden,	} to be found.	gefragt werden,	} to be asked.
<i>b. Indirect.</i> gefunden zu werden,		gefragt zu werden,	

*Past.*

<i>a. Direct.</i> gefunden worden seyn,	gefragt worden seyn,
<i>b. Indirect.</i> gefunden worden zu seyn,	gefragt worden zu seyn,
to have been found.	to have been asked.

*Direct, or Indicative Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde gefunden, I am found.	ich werde gefragt, I am asked.
2nd p. du wirst gefunden, thou art found.	du wirst gefragt, thou art asked.
3rd p. er wird gefunden, he is found.	er wird gefragt, he is asked.

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden gefunden, we are found.	wir werden gefragt, we are asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet gefunden, you are found.	ihr werdet gefragt, you are asked.
3rd p. sie werden gefunden, they are found.	sie werden gefragt, they are asked.

## RELATIVE PAST, OR IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich wurde	} gefunden	I was	} found.	ich wurde	} gefragt	I was	} asked.	
2nd p. du wurdest				du wurdest				thou wast
3rd p. er wurde				er wurde				he was

*Plural.*

1st p. wir wurden	} gefunden	we were	} found.	wir werden	} gefragt	we were	} asked.	
2nd p. ihr wurdet				ihre wurdet				you were
3rd p. sie wurden				sie wurden				they were

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Direct, or Indicative Mood.*

## ABSOLUTE PAST, OR PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich bin	} gefunden worden	I have	} been found.	ich bin	} gefragt worden	I have	} been asked.
2nd p. du bist		thou hast		du bist		thou hast	
3rd p. er ist		he has		er ist		he has	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir sind	} gefunden worden	we have	} been found.	wir sind	} gefragt worden	we have	} been asked.
2nd p. ihr seyd		you have		ihr seyd		you have	
3rd p. sie sind		they have		sie sind		they have	

## ANTERIOR PAST, OR PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich war	} gefunden worden	I had	} been found.	ich war	} gefragt worden	I had	} been asked.
2nd p. du warst		thou hadst		du warst		thou hadst	
3rd p. er war		he had		er war		he had	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir waren	} gefunden worden	we had	} been found.	wir waren	} gefragt worden	we had	} been asked.
2nd p. ihr waret		you had		ihr waret		you had	
3rd p. sie waren		they had		sie waren		they had	

## FIRST FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde	} gefunden werden	I shall	} be found.	ich werde	} gefragt werden	I shall	} be asked.
2nd p. du wirst		thou wilt		du wirst		thou wilt	
3rd p. er wird		he will		er wird		he will	



## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Direct, or Indicative Mood.**Plural.*

1st p. wir werden	} gefunden werden	we shall	} be found.	wir werden	} gefragt werden	we shall	} be asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet		you will		ihr werdet		you will	
3rd p. sie werden		they will		sie werden		they will	

## SECOND FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde	} gefunden worden seyn	I shall	} have been found.	ich werde	} gefragt worden seyn	I shall	} have been asked.
2nd p. du wirst		thou wilt		du wirst		thou wilt	
3rd p. er wird		he will		er wird		he will	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden	} gefunden worden seyn	we shall	} have been found.	wir werden	} gefragt worden seyn	we shall	} have been asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet		you will		ihr werdet		you will	
3rd p. sie werden		they will		sie werden		they will	

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.*

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde	} gefunden	(that) I	} be found.	ich werde	} gefragt	(that) I	} be asked.
2nd p. du werdest		(that) thou		du werdest		(that) thou	
3rd p. er werde		(that) he		er werde		(that) he	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden	} gefunden	(that) we	} be found.	wir werden	} gefragt	(that) we	} be asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet		(that) you		ihr werdet		(that) you	
3rd p. sie werden		(that) they		sie werden		(that) they	

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.*

## IMPERFECT, OR PRESENT CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich würde	} gefunden	I were	} found.	ich würde	} gefragt	I were	} asked.
2nd p. du würdest		thou wert		du würdest		thou wert	
3rd p. er würde		he were		er würde		he were	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir würden	} gefunden	we were	} found.	wir würden	} gefragt	we were	} asked.
2nd p. ihr würdet		you were		ihr würdet		you were	
3rd p. sie würden		they were		sie würden		they were	

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich sey	} gefunden worden	I have	} been found.	ich sey	} gefragt worden	I have	} been asked.
2nd p. du seyst		thou have		du seyst		thou have	
3rd p. er sey		he have		er sey		he have	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir seyen	} gefunden worden	we have	} been found.	wir seyen	} gefragt worden	we have	} been asked.
2nd p. ihr seyet		you have		ihr seyet		you have	
3rd p. sie seyen		they have		sie seyen		they have	

## PLUPERFECT, OR CONDITIONAL PAST.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich wäre	} gefunden worden	I had	} been found.	ich wäre	} gefragt worden	I had	} been asked.
2nd p. du wärest		thou had		du wärest		thou had	
3rd p. er wäre		he had		er wäre		he had	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir wären	} gefunden worden	we had	} been found.	wir wären	} gefragt worden	we had	} been asked.
2nd p. ihr wäret		you had		ihr wäret		you had	
3rd p. sie wären		they had		sie wären		they had	

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.*

## FIRST FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde	} gefunden werden	I will	} be found.	ich werde	} gefragt werden	I will	} be asked.
2nd p. du werdest		thou wilt		du werdest		thou wilt	
3rd p. er werde		he will		er werde		he will	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden	} gefunden werden	we shall	} be found.	wir werden	} gefragt werden	we shall	} be asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet		you will		ihr werdet		you will	
3rd p. sie werden		they will		sie werden		they will	

## SECOND FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich werde	} gefunden worden seyn	I shall	} have been found.	ich werde	} gefragt worden seyn	I shall	} have been asked.
2nd p. du werdest		thou wilt		du werdest		thou wilt	
3rd p. er werde		he will		er werde		he will	

*Plural.*

1st p. wir werden	} gefunden worden seyn	we shall	} have been found.	wir werden	} gefragt worden seyn	we shall	} have been asked.
2nd p. ihr werdet		you will		ihr werdet		you will	
3rd p. sie werden		they will		sie werden		they will	

## FIRST FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich würde	} gefunden werden	I should	} be found.	ich würde	} gefragt werden	should	} be asked.
2nd p. du würdest		thou shouldst		du würdest		thou shouldst	
3rd p. er würde		he should		er würde		he should	

## ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

## MODERN CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indirect, or Subjunctive Mood.**Plural.*

1st p. wir würden	} gefunden werden	} we should	} be found.	mir würden	} gefragt werden	} we should	} be asked.	
2nd p. ihr würdet				ihr würdet				you should
3rd p. sie würden				sie würden				they should

## SECOND FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

*Singular.*

1st p. ich würde	} gefunden worden seyn	} I should	} have been found.	ich würde	} gefragt worden seyn	} I should	} have been asked.	
2nd p. du würdest				du würdest				thou shouldst
3rd p. er würde				er würde				he should

*Plural.*

1st p. wir würden	} gefunden worden seyn	} we should	} have been found.	mir würden	} gefragt worden seyn	} we should	} have been asked.	
2nd p. ihr würdet				ihr würdet				you should
3rd p. sie würden				sie würden				they should

*Remark 1.* It has been pointed out in the Preliminary Chapter, that the conjugation of the verb *seyn*,\* may be considered, with regard to the imperfect of the indicative, as the pattern of the conjugation of all the verbs of the ancient form. The following examples will show the application of that rule to the imperfect of the subjunctive also. As *war* becomes *wäre*, by modifying the radical vowel and adding to it the termination *-e*; thus,—to choose the same verbs for examples again—*sprach* becomes, by the same operation, *spräche*; *fiel*, *fände*; and *schrieb*—the radical vowel of which cannot be modified in the same way as *a*, *o*, *u*,—becomes *schriebe*.

\* The conjugation of *seyn* is a compound of several verbs. The infinitive *seyn*, and the plural of the present indicative, *sind* (the Latin *sunt*), as well as the singular and plural of the present subjunctive, *sey*, *seyen*, are like

*Singular.*

1st p.	ich wäre.	ich spräche.	ich fände.	ich schriebe.
2nd p.	du wärest.	du sprächest.	du fändest.	du schriebest.
3rd p.	er wäre.	er spräche.	er fände.	er schriebe.

*Plural.*

1st p.	mir wären.	mir sprächen.	mir fänden.	mir schrieben.
2nd p.	ihr wäret.	ihr sprächet.	ihr fändet.	ihr schriebet.
3rd p.	sie wären.	sie sprächen.	sie fänden.	sie schrieben.

There are some verbs which in the imperfect subjunctive take the modified form of a vowel altogether different from that of the imperfect indicative, *e.g.*, *helfen* (to help), imperfect *hülfe*, imperfect subjunctive *hülfe*:—they are all of them specially mentioned in the list of the verbs of the ancient conjugation given below.

*Remark 2.* Some of the verbs of the ancient conjugation change their radical vowel in the second and third person singular of the present indicative; and some, besides, in the second person singular of the imperative, which latter then drops the ending *-e*.

- a.* Verbs with the radical vowel *a* change it in the second and third person singular of the present indicative into the modified sound *ä*, *e.g.*,

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1st p.	ich fahre.	ich falle.	ich schlafe.
2nd p.	du fährst.	du fällst.	du schläfst.
3rd p.	er fährt.	er fällt.	er schläft.

The present subjunctive, on the other hand, is formed, according to the general rule, without any change of the radical vowel from the infinitive.

---

the Latin *eo-esse, sum* (*eo-sum*), directly derived from a Sanscrit root. The singular of the present indicative, *bin* (as also the English "to be"), is derived from a root which, like *fuī*, is cognate with the Greek *φύειν*. The imperfect, *war*, (originally *was*), and the participle past, *gewesen*, are derived from the obsolete infinitive *wesen*. The old form of the imperfect, *was*, still used in English, has gradually become obsolete in German prose, but is even now met with in poetry, *e.g.*, in some of Göthe's, where, it is true, he endeavours to imitate the style of the poets of the 16th century.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

1st p.	ich fahre.	ich falle.	ich schlafe.
2nd p.	du fahrest.	du fallest.	du schlafest.
3rd p.	er fahre.	er falle.	er schlafe.

- b. Most of the verbs with the radical vowel *e* change it in those forms and also in the second person singular of the imperative into *ie* or *i*.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1st p.	ich sehe.	ich spreche.	ich werfe.
2nd p.	du siehst.	du sprichst.	du wirfst.
3rd p.	er sieht.	er spricht.	er wirft.

## IMPERATIVE, SINGULAR.

2nd p.	sieh.	sprich.	wirf.
--------	-------	---------	-------

The present subjunctive also of these verbs is formed according to the rule mentioned just now.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

1st p.	ich sehe.	ich spreche.	ich werfe.
2nd p.	du sehest.	du sprechest.	du werfest.
3rd p.	er sehe.	er spreche.	er werfe.

- c. Some verbs with the radical vowel *ie* used formerly to be conjugated so as to change *ie* into *eu*, both in the present indicative and in the imperative; *e.g.*, *ich fliehe*, *du fleuchst*, *er fleucht*; imperative, *fleuch*. This form is now obsolete, except in poetry, where it may still be found, mostly for rhyme's sake.

*Remark 3.* The prefix *ge* of the participle past is not used:—

- a. With inseparable compound verbs, (of which more in the sequel), especially with verbs having their radical portion preceded by the enclitical\* syllables:—

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
be-	begehren, to covet.	begehr.
empf-	empfangen, to receive.	empfangen.
ent-	entbehren, to miss.	entbehr.
er-	erlangen, to obtain.	erlangt.
ge-	genießen, to enjoy.	genossen.
ver-	verdrießen, to annoy.	verdröffen.
zer-	zerstören, to destroy.	zerstört.

\* The use of the term "enclitical" in reference to those prefixes, contrary to the established custom of applying it to affixes only, rests on the authority of J. Grimm.

It may be seen from the examples given, that this rule bears alike upon the verbs of ancient and modern conjugation.

- b. With verbs introduced from foreign languages into German, and formed by the foreign root with the addition of the ending -iren or ieren; e.g.,

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
studiren, to study (from the Latin <i>stud-ere</i> ).	studirt.
marſchiren, to march (from the French <i>march-er</i> ).	marſchirt.
regieren, to reign (from the Latin <i>reg-ere</i> ).	regirt.

*Remark 4.* Concerning the reflexive verbs, it will be well to remember that the reflexive pronoun is to take that place which according to the rules on the position of words in the sentence, should be assigned to the case governed by the verb; in every other respect their conjugation is the same as that of the common transitive verbs; e.g., *ich befinne mich*, I remember; *ich habe mich beſonnen*; *ich werde mich beſinnen*. In the latter two tenses, (the perfect and future) the participle and infinitive are, according to the general rule, (see Preliminary Chapter), placed after the case governed by the verb; but this ought not to be confounded with the French mode of conjugating the reflexive verb, in which the reflexive pronoun is placed between the subject and direct conjugated verb:—*je me souviens*.

*Remark 5.* The *e* of the termination -en, is very frequently dropped in verbs the root of which ends in *h*, or in a vowel; e.g., *ſeh-en*, *ſehn*; *zieh-en*, *zieh'n*; *thu-en*, *thun*; and always in verbs, the radical portion of which consists of two syllables with the second ending in -el or -er; e.g., *handeln*, to act; *hindern*, to hinder. This latter drops the -e before *l* or *r*, when an -e follows these consonants; e.g., *ich handle*, *ich hindre*; in all the other forms of their conjugations the *e* of the conjugational ending is dropped; e.g., *er hindert*, *er handelt*, etc. Some verbs of the ancient conjugation, with their root ending in -t or -th, drop the -t of the third person singular in the present indicative; e.g., *ich rathe*, I advise, *er rath*; *ich gelte*, I am considered, *er gilt*. They are all of them specially mentioned in the following list of the verbs belonging to the ancient conjugation. The ending -e of the imperative also is very frequently dropped in verbs, the radical portion of which consists of not more than one syllable; e.g., *geh'* instead of *gehe*; *komm'* instead of *komme*.

## VERBS OF THE ANCIENT CONJUGATION.

*Direction.*—The verbs placed at the head of each class exhibit the characteristic vowels (printed in italics) of the three principal constituents of the conjugation, the infinitive, imperfect, and participle past (see above p. 47). It is to be borne in mind that the consonants of the root remain unchanged. The example merely shows the succession of the vowels; these, however, being once known, the whole conjugation of each verb may be formed by attending to the rules given both in this, and in the Preliminary Chapter. The Memnonic words, appended to each class, show its characteristic vowels; the first vowel, that of the infinitive, the second that of the imperfect; the third that of the participle past of the class to which they are made to refer; *e.g.*, the vowels in the Memnonic word *Ragusa* correspond to those in, *fahren*, *fuhr*, *gefahren*; the vowels in *Pizzaro*, to those in *spinnen*, *spann*, *gesponnen*. To remember these words, is therefore, to remember the succession and changes of the radical vowel in the three characteristic constituents of all the different classes of the ancient conjugation.

WITH THE RADICAL VOWEL\* *a*.

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Part. Past.</i>
1.— <i>fahren</i> ,	<i>fuhr</i> ,	<i>gefahren</i> .

*Ragusa*.

<i>fahren</i> , to drive.	<i>schlagen</i> , to strike.
<i>graben</i> , to dig.	<i>tragen</i> , to carry.
<i>† laden</i> , to load.	<i>wachsen</i> , to grow.
<i>† schaffen</i> , to create ( <i>imperf.</i> <i>schuf</i> ).	<i>waschen</i> , to wash.

The verb *backen*, to bake, is now more frequently conjugated in the imperfect according to the modern form, making *backte* instead of *buck*, which is becoming more and more obsolete. Its participle past is *gebacken*. The

---

\* The verbs are classified here according to the radical vowel of their infinitive, and the verbs of each class placed in alphabetical order, or according to similarity of the root. This arrangement will be found most convenient for reference.



following verbs likewise make their participle past according to the ancient, and all the rest of their conjugation according to the modern form:—*spalten*, to split, imperf. *spaltete*, part. past *gespalten*; and in the same way, *malen*, to grind; *salzen*, to salt. *Schaffen*, to work, as well as its compounds *verschaffen*, *anschaffen*, etc., is to be conjugated according to the modern form.

*Mem.*—The verbs in this and the next division, marked † do not change their vowel in the second and third person singular of the present indicative (Exceptions to rule in Rem. 2. a.). The forms *tāst* and *tāt* may still be found, but are becoming more and more obsolete.

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Partic. Past.</i>
2.— <i>blasen</i> ,	<i>blies</i> ,	<i>geblasen</i> .

*Gabriela.*

<i>blasen</i> , to blow.	<i>fangen</i> , to catch.	<i>lassen</i> , to let.
<i>braten</i> , to roast.	<i>hängen</i> , to hang.	<i>räthen</i> , to advise,
<i>fallen</i> , to fall,	<i>halten</i> , to hold,	( <i>er rāth</i> , see Rem. 5).
(imperf. <i>fiel</i> ).	( <i>er hält</i> , see Rem. 5).	<i>schlafen</i> , to sleep.

To the same class belong:—

† <i>rufen</i> , to call,	<i>rief</i> ,	<i>gerufen</i> .
<i>stoßen</i> , to push,	<i>stieß</i> ,	<i>gestoßen</i> .
<i>laufen</i> , to run,	<i>lief</i> ,	<i>gelaufen</i> .
† <i>hauen</i> , to hew,	<i>hieb</i> ,	<i>gehauen</i> .

WITH THE RADICAL VOWEL *e*.

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Partic. Past.</i>
1.— <i>geben</i> ,	<i>gab</i> ,	<i>gegeben</i> .

*Benares.*

<i>fressen</i> , to devour.	<i>geschehen</i> , to happen.	<i>sehen</i> , to see.
<i>geben</i> , to give.	<i>lesen</i> , to read.	<i>treten</i> , to tread ( <i>du trittst</i> ,
† <i>genesen</i> , to recover.	<i>maessen</i> , to measure.	<i>er tritt</i> , see Rem. 5).
	<i>vergeffen</i> , to forget.	

To the same class belong:—

<i>bitten</i> ,* to beg,	<i>bat</i> ,	<i>gebeten</i> .
<i>liegen</i> , to lie,	<i>lag</i> ,	<i>gelegen</i> .
<i>sitzen</i> , to sit,	<i>saß</i> ,	<i>gesessen</i> .
<i>essen</i> , to eat,	<i>aß</i> ,	<i>gegessen</i> .
<i>kommen</i> , to come,	<i>kam</i> ,	<i>gekommen</i> .

\* *beten*, to pray; *legen*, to lay; *setzen*, to set, are conjugated according to the modern form (*betete*, *legte*, *setzte*; *gebetet*, *gelegt*, *gesetzt*). The same is the case with several other verbs. More will be said about it in the Chapter on Derivation.

*Mem.*—The verbs marked ‡ in the foregoing and the third subdivision do not change their radical vowel *e* in the second and third persons singular of the indicative present. (Exceptions to rule in Remark 2. *b*).

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Partic. Past.</i>
2.— <i>bergen</i> ,	<i>bar</i> g,	<i>gebor</i> gen.

*Bergamo.*

<i>bergen</i> , to conceal.	<i>gelten</i> , to be worth	<i>stehlen</i> , to steal.
<i>brechen</i> , to break.	( <i>er gilt</i> , see Rem. 5).	<i>sterben</i> , to die (starve).
<i>befehlen</i> , to command.	<i>helfen</i> , to help.	<i>treffen</i> , to hit
<i>dreschen</i> , to thrash.	<i>nehmen</i> , to take	( <i>imperf. ich traf</i> ).
<i>empfehlen</i> , to recom-	( <i>nahm</i> , <i>genommen</i> ;	<i>verderben</i> , to spoil.
mend.	<i>du nimmst</i> , <i>er nimmt</i> ).	<i>werden</i> , to sue for
<i>erschrecken</i> ,* to be	<i>schelten</i> , to scold	<i>werden</i> , to become
frightened.	( <i>er schilt</i> , see Rem. 5).	(when used as auxil.
<i>gebären</i> , to bear	<i>sprechen</i> , to speak.	verb:— <i>impf. wurde</i> ).
(children).	<i>stechen</i> , to stick.	<i>werfen</i> , to throw.

*Befehlen*, *empfehlen*, *gelten*, *stehlen*, have in the imperfect subjunctive their radical vowel changed into *ö*; *helfen*, *sterben*, *verderben*, *werden*, and *werfen*, into *ü*; thus:—*besöhle*, *empföhle*, *gölte*, *stöhle*; and *hülfe*, *stürbe*, *verdürbe*, *würde*, *würfe*.

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Partic. Past.</i>
3.— <i>bersten</i> ,	<i>bor</i> st,	<i>gebor</i> sten.

*Regropont.*

<i>bersten</i> , to burst.	‡ <i>heben</i> , to lift (heave).	‡ <i>scheeren</i> , to shear.
‡ <i>betregen</i> , to induce.	<i>melken</i> , to milk.	<i>schwellen</i> , to swell.
<i>fechten</i> , to fight.	‡ <i>pflügen</i> , to practise.	<i>schmelzen</i> , to melt.
<i>flechten</i> , to wreath.	<i>quellen</i> , to spring forth.	‡ <i>weben</i> , to weave.

The neuter verbs *verlöschen* and *erlöschen*, to become extinct, to die away, are conjugated like this subdivision of the ancient form, (*erlösch*, *erlösch*en; *du erlöschest*, *er erlösch*t); the transitive *auslöschen*, belongs to the modern conjugation (*auslösch*te, *ausgelösch*t).

\* *erschrecken*, to be frightened, as a neuter verb is conjugated in the ancient form; as a transitive verb, with the meaning, "to frighten," in the modern form.

The verb *bewegen*, to move, to excite, and also *pfelegen*, except in a few phrases; e.g., *Umgang pflegen*, to keep intercourse with—are conjugated according to the modern form (*bewegte*, *pflegte*, etc.)

WITH THE RADICAL VOWEL (DIPHTHONG) *ei*.

*Infin.*      *Imperf.*      *Partic. Past.*

1.—*bleiben*,    *blieb*,      *geblieben*.

*Speight*, *pie*, *lie*.

<i>bleiben</i> , to remain.	<i>preisen</i> , to praise.	<i>schweigen</i> , to be silent.
<i>gebeissen</i> , to thrive.	<i>reiben</i> , to rub.	<i>steigen</i> , to ascend.
<i>heissen</i> , to call	<i>scheiden</i> , to part.	<i>speien</i> , to spit.
(part. past <i>geheissen</i> ).	<i>scheinen</i> , to shine.	<i>treiben</i> , to drive.
<i>leihen</i> , to lend.	<i>schreiben</i> , to write.	<i>weisen</i> , to show.
<i>meiden</i> , to avoid.	<i>schreien</i> , to scream	<i>zeihen</i> , to accuse of.

*Infin.*      *Imperf.*      *Partic. Past.*

2.—*beißen*,    *biß*,      *gebissen*.

*Eight*, *tit*, *bits*.

<i>beißen</i> , to bite.	<i>erbleichen</i> , to	* <i>leiben</i> , to suffer.	** <i>greifen</i> , to
( <i>sich</i> ) <i>befleissen</i> , to	grow pale.	* <i>gleiten</i> , to glide.	grasp.
exert (oneself).	<i>gleichen</i> , to re-	* <i>reiten</i> , to ride.	** <i>sneifen</i> , to
<i>reißen</i> , to tear.	semble.	* <i>schneiden</i> , to cut.	pinch.
<i>schleißen</i> , to slit.	<i>streichen</i> , to strike	* <i>streiten</i> , to con-	** <i>pfeifen</i> , to
<i>schmeißen</i> , to	<i>schleichen</i> , to	tend.	pipe.
smite.	sneak.	* <i>schreiten</i> , to	** <i>schleifen</i> , to
<i>spfeissen</i> , to split.	<i>weichen</i> , to yield.	step.	grind.
	* <i>leiden</i> , litt, gelitten.		
	** <i>greifen</i> , griff, gegriffen,		

and all those, marked either \* or \*\* have the same duplication of the final consonant of the root.

WITH THE RADICAL VOWEL (DIPHTHONG) *ie*.*Infin.*      *Imperf.*      *Partic. Past.**bieten*,      *bot*,      *geboten*.*Gerophon.*

<i>bieten</i> ,* to offer.	<i>glimmen</i> , to smoulder.	<i>fließen</i> , to flow.
<i>biegen</i> , to bend.	<i>klimmen</i> , to climb.	<i>genießen</i> ,* to enjoy.
<i>betriegen</i> , to cheat.	<i>frieren</i> , to freeze.	<i>gießen</i> ,* to pour.
<i>wiegen</i> , to weigh.	<i>verlieren</i> , to lose.	<i>schießen</i> , to shoot.
<i>fliegen</i> , to fly.	<i>schieben</i> , to push.	<i>schließen</i> , to shut.
<i>friechen</i> , to crawl.	<i>flieben</i> , to fly (like dust).	<i>sprießen</i> , to sprout.
<i>riechen</i> , to smell.		<i>verbräßen</i> , to annoy.
<i>fliehen</i> , to flee.		
<i>ziehen</i> , to draw		
( <i>impf.</i> <i>zog</i> ; <i>part.</i> <i>gezogen</i> ).		

To this class belong:—

INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PARTIC. PAST.
<i>lügen</i> , to tell a lie,	<i>log</i> ,	<i>gelogen</i> .
<i>saugen</i> , to suck,	<i>sog</i> ,	<i>gesogen</i> .
<i>saufen</i> , to gulp,	<i>soff</i> ,	<i>gesoffen</i> .
<i>triefen</i> , to drip,	<i>troff</i> ,	<i>getroffen</i> (better, <i>geträuft</i> , from the form <i>träufen</i> ).
<i>flieben</i> , to boil (to seeth),	<i>sott</i> ,	<i>gesotten</i> .
<i>schwören</i> , to swear,	<i>schwor</i> (or <i>schwur</i> ),	<i>geschworen</i> .

WITH THE ROOT *-imm-*, OR *-inn-*.

*Infin.*      *Imperf.*      *Partic. Past.*  
*spinnen*.      *spann*.      *gesponnen*.

*Pizzarro.*

<i>beginnen</i> , to begin.	<i>finnen</i> , to meditate.
<i>rinnen</i> , to flow.	<i>spinnen</i> , to spin.
<i>gewinnen</i> , to win.	<i>schwimmen</i> , to swim.

All the verbs of this class may, in the imperfect subjunctive, have their radical vowel modified to *ö*, *e.g.*, *begönne*, *sönne*, *gewönne*; but it is perhaps better in plain style to beware of these recondate forms, just as, in French, people will rather avoid using forms like *parlassiez*.

\* Do not confound *bieten* (to offer), *bot*, *geboten*, with *bitten* (to beg), *bat*, *gebeten*; *genießen* (to enjoy), *genoß*, *genossen*, with *genesen* (to recover), *genas*, *genesen*; *vergießen* (to spill), *vergoß*, *vergossen*, with *vergeffen* (to forget), *vergaß*, *vergeffen*.

WITH THE ROOT IN -ind-, -ing-, -inf-.

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Partic. Past.</i>
binden.	band.	gebunden.

**Bindaruz.**

binden, to bind.	bingen, to hire	ringen, to struggle.	sinken, to sink.
finden, to find.	(impf. bung).	schlingen, to sling	stinken, to smell
schinden, to flay	bringen, to pene-	schwingen, to swing	ill.
(impf. schund).	trate.	singen, to sing.	trinken, to drink.
schwinden, to va-	gelingen, to suc-	springen, to spring.	
nish.	ceed.	zwingen, to com-	
winden, to wind.	flingen, to sound.	pel.	

**C.—IRREGULAR VERBS.**

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT TENSE.	IMPERFECT.	PARTIC. PAST.
1. dürfen,	ich darf, I dare,	ich durfte,	gedurft.
können,	ich kann, I can,	ich konnte,	gekonnt.
mögen,	ich mag, I may,	ich mochte,	gemocht.
müssen,	ich muß, I must,	ich mußte,	gemußt.
sollen,	ich soll, I ought to,	ich sollte,	gesollt.
wollen,	ich will, I will,	ich wollte,	gewollt.
wissen,	ich weiß, I know,	ich wußte.	gewußt.

The rule concerning the conjugation of the present indicative of these verbs is given in the Preliminary Chapter. Their present subjunctive is regularly formed from the infinitive. Their imperfect subjunctive, except that of *sollen* and *wollen*, has the modified vowel, *dürfte*, *könnte*, *möchte*, etc.

The verbs,—

brennen, to burn;	rennen, to run;
kennen, to know;	senden, to send;
nennen, to name;	wenden, to turn;

are conjugated according to the modern form, but change their radical vowel *e* in the imperfect and participle past into *a*:—*brennen*, *brannte*, *gebrannt*; *senden*, *sandte*, *gesandt*, etc.

INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PARTIC. PAST.
3. bringen, to bring,	brachte,	gebracht.*
denken, to think,	dachte,	gedacht.*
gehen, to go,	ging,	gegangen.
stehen, to stand,	stand (stund),	gestanden.
thun, to do,	that,	gethan.

The imperfect subjunctive of *bringen* and *denken*, has the modified vowel, *brächte*, *dächte*. *Gehen* is corrupted from *gangen*, *stehen* from *standen*. Both, therefore, are properly speaking regular verbs of the ancient conjugation. The imperfect subjunctive of *stehen* is *stünde*, just as the verb *wachsen* makes in the same tense *wüchse*. *Thun*, as has been remarked before, is contracted from *thu-en*. Its present tense, consequently, is, *ich thue*, *du thust* (*thu-est*), *er thut* (*thu-et*), *wir thun* (*thu-en*), *ihr thut* (*thu-et*), *sie thun* (*thu-en*). Imperfect subjunctive *thäte*.

## CHAPTER V.

### THE NUMERALS.

#### *The Cardinal Numbers.*

1. ein.	11. elf (eif).	
2. zwei.	12. zwölf.	20. zwanzig.
3. drei.	13. dreizehn.	30. dreißig.
4. vier.	14. vierzehn.	40. vierzig.
5. fünf.	15. fünfzehn.	50. fünfzig.
6. sechs.	16. sechzehn.	60. sechzig.
7. sieben.	17. siebenzehn.	70. siebenzig.
8. acht.	18. achtzehn.	80. achtzig.
9. neun.	19. neunzehn.	90. neunzig.
10. zehn.		100. hundert.
	1000. tausend.	

---

\* Do not confound the conjugation of *bringen*, *brachte*, *gebracht*, with that of *brechen* (to break), *brach*, *gebrochen*; nor that of *denken*, *dachte*, *gedacht*; with *danke* (to thank), *danke*, *gedankt*.

Up to one hundred the small number always precedes the large one.

21. ein und zwanzig.	31. ein und dreißig.
22. zwei und zwanzig.	32. zwei und dreißig.
23. drei und zwanzig.	33. drei und dreißig.
24. vier und zwanzig.	34. vier und dreißig.
25. fünf und zwanzig.	35. fünf und dreißig.
26. sechs und zwanzig.	36. sechs und dreißig.
27. sieben und zwanzig.	37. sieben und dreißig.
28. acht und zwanzig.	38. acht und dreißig.
29. neun und zwanzig.	39. neun und dreißig, etc.

With this exception, the numbers are exactly placed as in English; *e.g.*,

1859. eintaufend acht hundert (or, achtzehnhundert) neun und fünfzig.  
 2982. zweitaufend neun hundert (und) zwei und achtzig.  
 10,434. zehntausend vier hundert vier und dreißig.  
 186,748. hundert (und) sechs und dreißig tausend sieben hundert (und) acht und vierzig.

*Remark 1.* Eins is the form always used in counting; but, if a noun follows, the numeral ein is declined like the definite article throughout all the three genders.

*Remark 2.* Zwei and drei have a genitive, zweier and dreier, which is used only, when the genitive is not expressed in a preceding article or pronoun; *e.g.*, der Vater dreier Söhne, the father of three sons; but, der Vater dieser drei Knaben, the father of these three boys. The dative also of the cardinal numbers is used, but only when they are not followed by a noun; *e.g.*, mit sechs fahren, to drive with six (horses); mit zwanzigen sich messen, to measure one's strength against twenty (opponents). Hundert and tausend are not declined when preceding a noun as numerals, *e.g.*, mit tausend Grüßen, with a thousand compliments; otherwise they are to be treated as substantives of the neuter gender.\* Million is neither more nor less than a substantive of the feminine gender, and declined accordingly.

---

\* Das Jahrhundert, the century; das Jahrtausend, the millennium.

*Remark 3.* There are to be mentioned as collective numbers:—

ein Paar, a pair or couple (not limited to the exact number of two).

daß Duzend, the dozen.

daß Schoß, three score.

daß Mandel, a lot of fifteen (only used for commodities sold by tale).

Die Hälfte, the half, is derived from the adjective halb, which is either declined in the usual way; *e.g.*, daß halbe Duzend, or ein halbes Duzend; but, more frequently in composition with the noun, daß or ein Halbduzend.

*Remark 4.* The ordinal numbers are to be considered as adjectives, and are formed from the cardinal numbers by adding to them the ending -te, up to the number twenty; (*e.g.*, der siebente, the seventh, der zehnte, the tenth, der neunzehnte, the nineteenth); and from twenty upwards the ending -ste, (der zwanzigste, the twentieth, der siebenzigste, the seventieth, der hundertste, the hundredth). In compound ordinal numbers, the last number only takes the ending (der ein und zwanzigste, the one and twentieth, der hundert und vierte, the hundred and fourth). Der erste, the first, and der dritte, the third, are irregular.

An adverb formed from the ordinal numbers by adding the ending -ens; *e.g.*, erstens, zweitens, drittens, etc, expresses the meaning, “in the first, second, third, etc., place.” Zuerst means at first, as a term referring to time.

There is an interrogative pronoun, der wie vielte? (as it were, “the how muchth?”), used in questions to which the ordinal numbers would give the answer. This is an exceedingly convenient expression, wanting in the English language. Der wie vielte ist heute? is the question, as to what day of the month it is.

*Remark 5.* Iterative numerals, answering the question, “how often?” are formed from the cardinal numbers combined with the substantive Mal, which in this combination is not declined, the number and the substantive being spelt as one word: einmal, once; zweimal, twice; zwanzigmal, twenty times; hundertmal, a hundred times, etc. In combinations, such as, daß erste mal, the first time; zum (instead of zu dem) erstenmal, for the first time.



Mal is to be treated like any other substantive, preceded by an ordinal numeral.

*Remark 6.* The fractions or parts of a divisional proportion are expressed by substantives, formed from the ordinal numerals with the ending -el; *e.g.*, das Fünfte!, the fifth part; das Zwanzigste!, the twentieth part.

It may be seen from these examples that the same difference between t and ft is here observed, as in the case of the ordinal numerals.

*Remark 7.* The numbers expressing half (dimidial numerals), add the termination "halb" to the ordinal of the next higher integral number; *e.g.*, four and a half, fünftehalb; six and a half, siebenthehalb; as it were, half (from four) to five, half (from six) to seven.\* This form is indeclinable like the cardinal numbers. With the numbers above ten, it is preferable to use the same form as in English; *e.g.*, ein und zwanzig und ein halb, twenty-one and a half. In the latter form, halb, and the article before it, are declined like any other adjective with the indefinite article.

*Remark 8.* To express a variety of sorts, amounting to a certain number, the cardinal numbers are, as it were, put in the genitive feminine, with the otherwise obsolete noun -lei (species) added to them; thus, einerlei, zweierlei, dreierlei, hunderterlei, of one, of two, of three, of hundred sorts; and, likewise, mancherlei, vielerlei, and feinerlei, of many sorts, of a great number of sorts, none of any sort.

*Remark 9.* The multiple numeral adjectives (double, triple, etc.; or, in good honest Saxon English, twofold, threefold, etc.) are formed by adding the ending -fach or -fältig to the cardinal numbers: — zweifach, or zweifältig; hundertfach, or hundertfältig, etc.† They are declined like any other adjective.

*Remark 10.* To express a distribution by parties, collective numerals are compounded with the noun -weise (manner, shape), and used adverbially; *e.g.*, bußendweise, by (as it were, in the shape of) dozens; hundertweise, by hundreds (also, schaa-renweise, by

\* The same mode of speaking is also used to indicate the half hours; *e.g.*, halb sechs Uhr, half-past five; halb vier Uhr, half-past three.

† Also, einfach, vielfach, mannichfach.

crowds; *truppweise*, in troops, etc.). With non-collective cardinal numerals, the same notion is expressed in this way: — *je vier und vier* (or also, *je vier*), by fours; *je fünf und fünf* (*je fünf*), by fives, etc. *Zu vier*, *zu fünf*, etc., bears the meaning of, “in a party of four, or five,” etc.

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE PREPOSITIONS, AND THEIR ADVERBS.

#### I.—PREPOSITIONS.

##### A.—*Prepositions governing the Genitive.*

<i>Anstatt</i> , or <i>statt</i> , instead of.	<i>laut</i> , according to.
<i>halben</i> ( <i>halb</i> , <i>halber</i> ), on account of.	<i>mittels</i> ( <i>vermittelt</i> ), by means of—.
<i>wegen</i> , on account of.	<i>vermøge</i> , in virtue of.
<i>um</i> — <i>willen</i> , for the sake of —.	<i>ungeachtet</i> , notwithstanding.
<i>frøft</i> , in virtue of —.	<i>inmitten</i> , in the midst of —.

*Remark 1.* Most of these prepositions are, properly speaking, substantives; which is the reason why they are followed by the genitive, just as is the case with their English equivalents.

*Remark 2.* *Halb*, *halber*, and *halben*, are placed behind the substantive governed by them. *Wegen*, and *ungeachtet*, may stand either before or after the substantive. *Um* — *willen* is always separated; *e.g.*, *um des Friedens willen*, for peace' sake. *Halber* is only used with a substantive not preceded by an article; *e.g.*, *Beispiels halber*, for the sake of example.

*Remark 3.* The genitive of the personal pronouns is combined with *halb*, or *halben*, with *wegen*, and *um* — *willen*, so as to form a compound word; the usual ending -*er* being, however, changed into -*et*; *e.g.*, *meinethalb*, or *meinethalben*; *beinetwegen*; *um seines willen*. On the other hand, the compositions of these prepositions with the demonstrative and relative (interrogative) pronouns, are, *beßhalb*, *weßhalb*; *beßwegen*, *weßwegen*; and also, *beßungeachtet*.

*B.—Prepositions governing the Genitive or Dative.*

Unfern, or unweit, not far from.	zunächst, close.
innerhalb, in the inside of —.	seitwärts, by the side of —.
außerhalb, on the outside of —.	südwärts, to the south of —.
oberhalb, above.	nordwärts, to the north of — ;
unterhalb, underneath.	and other similar adverbs com-
diesseits, on this side.	pound with -wärts.
jenseits, on the other side.	troß, in spite of —.
während, during.	zufolge, in consequence of, or accord-
längs, along.	ing to.

*Remark 1.* These prepositions also are not prepositions in the true sense of the word, but rather adverbs and particles used as prepositions. It is generally considered better, to construe them with the genitive than with the dative.

*Remark 2.* Zufolge may be placed before the substantive, or follow it. In the former position, it requires the genitive; in the latter, the dative case of the substantive governed by it. Troß has sometimes the meaning of, "quite as much," or, "quite equal to," in phrases like, er raucht troß einem Holländer, he smokes quite as much as a Dutchman (as it were, smokes against him for a wager). In this meaning, it requires the dative case.

*C.—Prepositions governing the Dative alone.*

Auß, out of.	von, from.
außer, besides, or except.	zu, to.
bei, at, or near.	entgegen, towards.
mit, with.	zuwider, against.
nebst, and sammt, together with.	gemäß, according to.
nach, after, or according to.	gegenüber, opposite; or face to face
seit, since.	with, or compared with.
binnen, within (a certain time).	nächst, next to.

*Remark 1.* Do not confound bei with the English preposition "by." Its meaning is merely, *at*, *near*, or *with*; and it is not the preposition used after the passive, in sentences like, "Goliath was slain by David." Von is the preposition required in these instances; therefore, Goliath wurde von David erschlagen. Bei in its simple form, exclusively denotes position, not movement.

*Remark 2.* Nach, with the meaning "according to," is generally placed after the noun governed by it; *e. g.*, der Sage nach, according to rumour. Entgegen, zuwider, gemäß, may precede the noun, but more usually they follow it. Gegenüber, with the local meaning "opposite," had better be treated as an adverb in combination with the preposition von, and construed in two ways, gegenüber preceding both the preposition von and the noun; *e. g.*, gegenüber von unserem Hause, opposite our house; or, following the noun, von unserem Hause gegenüber. On the other hand, it ought not to be combined with von when it is to express the notion of comparison, or personal contra-position; *e. g.*, den großen Canadischen Seen gegenüber, ist der Bodensee nur ein Teich, in comparison with the large Canadian lakes, the Lake of Constance is but a pond; or, dir gegenüber fühl' ich keinen Neid, with regard to you (as it were, placed face to face with you), I feel no envy.

*D.—Prepositions governing the Accusative alone.*

durch, through.

ohne, without.

für, for.

um,\* around, about; in order to.

gegen, towards, or against, or in comparison to.

widder, against, contrary to.

gen instead of gegen, and sonder with the same meaning as ohne, are now rather obsolete, except in devotional style. Both these forms can only be used with a substantive which is not preceded by an article, *e. g.*, gen Himmel, towards heaven; sonder Zweifel, without doubt.

*Remark 1.* Durch, like the English "through," is placed after the substantive when it means the whole course of a certain time; *e. g.*, das Jahr durch, all the year through. It is then, properly speaking, an adverb, like hindurch.

*Remark 2.* Für has the meaning of "for," in the phrase "for and against" (pro and con); also, "in exchange for," and "I take him for." It is not used with an infinitive. Ohne is the Latin *sine*, the French *sans*; ohne and um, besides anstatt, are the only prepositions which may be used with the indirect infinitive:—

ohne zu fragen, without asking;

anstatt zu fragen, instead of asking;

um zu fragen, in order to ask.

---

\* Um originally expresses a rotatory movement in horizontal or perpendicular direction. As by the latter movement anything standing upright must be brought to the ground, um has also the meaning of "down;" especially in composition with verbs, like fallen, to fall; werfen, to throw. Umfallen, therefore means "to fall down," umwerfen, "to throw down."

E.—*Prepositions governing the Dative and Accusative.*

An, on, or near.

auf, upon.

hinter, behind.

in, in, or into.

neben, by the side of.

über, above.

unter, beneath, amongst.

vor, before.

zwischen, between.

All these prepositions govern the dative, when they are meant to express position or rest; and the accusative, when they express motion, or removal to a place; *e. g.*, *ich bin in der Kirche*, I am in church; *ich gehe in die Kirche*, I am going to church. *Das Glas steht auf dem Tische*, the glass is standing on the table; *stelle das Glas auf den Tisch*, place the glass on the table. The motion expressed by the verb, ought not to be confounded with that implied by the preposition; *e. g.*, in the sentence, "I am going into the garden," the preposition as well as the verb implies motion; the preposition, therefore, requires the accusative; in the sentence, "I am walking in the garden," the verb only implies motion, and the preposition does not (*I AM* in the garden, whilst I am walking); the preposition, therefore, requires the dative. Consequently, we say,—

*Ich gehe in den Garten*, I am going into the garden;

*Ich gehe in dem Garten (spazieren)*, I am walking in the garden;

and, on the same principle,—

*Er reitet auf den Berg*, he is riding up the mountain;

*Er reitet auf diesem Pferde*, he is riding on this horse.

The following prepositions are contracted with the definite article into one word:—

an dem into am  
bei dem „ beim  
in dem „ im  
von dem „ vom  
zu dem „ zum  
zu der „ zur

an das into ans  
in das „ ins  
für das „ fürs  
durch das „ durchs  
auf das „ aufs  
um das „ ums

## II.—ADVERBS DERIVED FROM, OR CONNECTED WITH, THE PREPOSITIONS.

*Remark 1.* The following prepositions have a distinct adverbial form:—

### PREPOSITIONS.

in,  
auß,  
vor,  
hinter,  
über (ober),  
unter,

### ADVERBS.

innen, within, inside.  
außen, without, outside.  
vorn, before, in front.  
hinten, behind, in the rear.  
oben, above, at the top.  
unten, below, at the bottom.

With regard to *innen* and *außen* *oben* and *unten*, there is to be observed that if the speaking person is himself in one of the positions expressed by these adverbs, he will call the opposite position (as the case may be), *drinnen*, *draußen*, *droben*, *drunten* (contracted from *darinnen*, see p. 14); *e.g.*,

If he is within ( <i>innen</i> ),	he calls without, <i>draußen</i> ,
If he is without ( <i>außen</i> ),	he calls within, <i>drinnen</i> ,
If he is above ( <i>oben</i> ),	he calls below, <i>drunten</i> ,
If he is below ( <i>unten</i> ),	he calls above, <i>droben</i> .

But when he is not himself in one of these positions, the simple forms (*außen*, *innen*, etc.) are used; *e.g.*, standing before the British Museum, you might say of persons who had gone in before you, *sie sind drinnen*; whilst you are within, you might say, *unser Wagen wartet draußen* (our carriage is waiting without). Whilst being on the ground floor of the same building, you might say, *die Naturalien-Sammlung ist droben*, the Museum of Natural History is upstairs; whilst being yourself in the first story, you would speak of the statues of the groundfloor as, *die Statuen drunten*. In all these cases, you would mark your own position by using *hier*, placed before the adverb; *e.g.*, being without, you say *hier außen*; being within, *hier innen*, etc. On the other hand, when speaking of the British Museum in the country, not being, therefore, either directly outside or inside, neither on the groundfloor, nor in the first story of it; you use, for determining those positions, the simple forms *außen*, *innen*, *oben*, *unten*.

*Remark 2.* The adverbs mentioned just now, express position. The different directions of movement are expressed by combinations of the pronominal adverbs *hier*, *da*, *wo* (see p. 14); or of the prepositions used adverbially; or of the verbs; with either of the two particles *hin* and *her*.

*Hin* means the direction leading away from the person who speaks.

*Her*, the direction leading towards the person who speaks.

*a.—Combinations of hin and her with the pronominal adverbs.*

Komm hieher, or daher, come here; geh' dahin, go thither.

Woher kommst du? where do you come from?

Wohin gehst du? where are you going (to)?

Sometimes her and hin in the latter phrases is put last, wo kommst du her? wo gehst du hin? Daher may mean either thence, or hither.

*b.—Combinations of hin and her with prepositions used adverbially.*

1. The particles being prefixed:—

hinan,	heran.	hinab,	herab (ab is an obsolete preposition, meaning "down").
hinauf,	herauf.	hinzu,	herzu.
hinunter,	herunter.	hinum (not generally used),	herum.
hinaus,	heraus.	_____	hervor.
hinein,*	herein.	_____	herbei.
hinüber,	herüber.	hindurch,	_____

In all these combinations, the preposition (which in these forms assumes the character of an adverb), expresses the movement; and the particles hin or her—each according to the rule given above—the direction of the movement; *e.g.*, whilst sitting in your room, you will answer a knock at the door by "herein!"; and you will bid your dog to leave the room, by calling to him "hinaus!" When you are on the groundfloor, and you tell your servant to go upstairs and fetch your hat, you say:—"Gehen Sie hinauf, und bringen Sie mir meinen Hut herunter." But when you are out of doors, you will politely invite a person indoors by "wollen Sie gefälligst hineingehen," or to come out, by "wollen Sie so gut seyn herauszukommen." And likewise you tell your servant, "gehen Sie hinunter in die Küche, und bringen Sie mir ein Glas Wasser herauf." These examples will be a guide for the use of all the rest.

2. The particles being affixed:—

Vorher, previously.	einher, along.
nachher, afterwards.	hinterher, in the rear.
seither, since (as adverb).	umher, all around.
nebenher, by the side of.	

In these combinations, the original meaning of her is less marked;—vorher, seither, nachher, are to all intents and purposes adverbs of time. The combinations nebenher and hinterher, have the meaning of a movement

\* In, meaning "into," is supplied in these combinations and also in those with the adverbial pronouns (see p. 14), by -ein; *e.g.*, darein, hierrein, worin, hinein, herein.

in the same direction with another; *nebenher*, by his side, *hinterher*, behind him; *e.g.*, *meine Schwestern fuhren in dem Wagen, und mein Bruder ritt nebenher*, my sisters were driving in the carriage, and my brother rode by its side; *das Regiment marschirte aus, das Geschütz fuhr hinterher*, the regiment marched out, the artillery drove behind it. In these sentences, it makes no difference whether the principal movement (here the movement of the carriage or of the regiment) is leading away from, or towards the person who speaks; in both instances *her* is the particle to be used. *hin* is used as affix with *vor*, *ohne*, and *um*. *Vorhin*, "just now." *Ohnehin* has the meaning of "otherwise, or besides" in sentences like the following:—*zögern führt obnehin zu nichts*, hesitation, besides, leads to nothing. *Umhin* is used only in the phrase *nicht umhin können*:—*ich kann nicht umhin, Ihre Aufrichtigkeit zu bewundern*, I cannot help admiring your sincerity.

*c — Combinations of hin and her with the verbs.*

The two particles may be combined with the verb either by themselves, or as compounds with the prepositions mentioned in the last two paragraphs (*a.* and *b.*): *hingehen*, *herkommen*, *hinausgehen*, *hereinkommen*, *hinauffsteigen*, *herunterfallen*, etc. These combinations admit of an endless variety; and they serve to describe position and movement with the utmost precision. Practice alone can fully teach all the niceties of this difficult part of the language; but the above simple rules, applied with due attention, will be found to afford sufficient guidance to the student.

**Remark 3.** The preposition *von* combines with *an* and *aus* in such a way, that *von* itself retains the character of a preposition, and the others adopt that of adverbs.

*Kaiser der Fünfte war vom zwanzigsten Jahr an Kaiser, Charles V. was emperor from his twentieth year (as it were, to begin from his twentieth year). Ich sah den Zug vom Fenster aus, I saw the procession from my window (as it were, from out of my window).*

**Remark 4.** The preposition *vor* forms compound adverbs with *an*, *aus*, and *bei*. *Voran* means either a foremost position, or going a-head, in the American sense of the word. *Voraus* means either, "beforehand," or also a position ahead of another. *Vorbei*, a movement past. *Vorbeigehen*, to pass. *Die Stunde ist vorbei*, the hour is past.

**Remark 5.** *Biß*, "until," or "as far as," is, properly speaking, not a preposition, but an adverb. It always requires the help of a preposition of time or locality; *e.g.*, *biß zu dieser Stunde*, until



this hour; or, *ich begleitete ihn bis über den Fluß*, I accompanied him to the other side of the river. The preposition may, however, be omitted before a noun without an article: — *bis nächsten Sonntag*, *bis Juli*, *bis London*, etc. The noun is then always put in the accusative. *Bis auf* has sometimes the meaning of "except"; *e. g.*, *alle bis auf einen*, all except one.

## SECTION II.—THE SENTENCE.

### CHAPTER I.

The most simple form of sentence is that consisting of not more than two factors: the subject, and the direct conjugated verb; \* *e. g.*, *die Sonne scheint*, the sun shines (is shining); *der Vogel singt*, the bird sings (is singing). To change any such sentence into a question, the verb is simply placed before the subject:—*scheint die Sonne? singt der Vogel?*

When the principal sentence consists of three factors, viz., the subject, the conjugated verb, and one or more predicative parts of speech,† the rule holds good which, as well as that concerning the accessory sentence, has already been stated in the preliminary chapter.

**Rule I.** In the principal sentence with three factors,—

- A. the subject;
- B. the verb;
- C. the predicative portion,—

the direct conjugated verb, the pivot of the sentence, stands second:—

Either: A	B	C	but never: A	C	B
Es	regnete	gestern.	Es	gestern	regnete.
or: C	B	A	nor: C	A	B
Gestern	regnete	es.	Gestern	es	regnete.

\* That part of the verb which changes according to the three persons; *e. g.*, *ich habe*, *du hast*, *er hat*. The infinitive and participle past of the compound tenses are the non-conjugated parts of the verb.

† That is, all the parts of speech, connected with the subject by means of the verb:—adjective, adverb, a substantive governed by the verb, or also a non-conjugated part of the verb (participle or infinitive). There may be one or more, or all of these parts of speech contained in a sentence. Rule I. avails even when not more than one of them is placed at the head of the sentence. The others then follow after the direct verb.

*Rule II.* In the accessory (relative, dependent, conjunctive) sentence, the conjugated verb stands last:—

Wir waren zu Hause, während es gestern regnete.  
We were at home whilst it rained yesterday.

*Remark 1.* That sentence is called principal, which is grammatically independent; that is to say, which can stand by itself. An accessory sentence, on the other hand, is that which cannot stand by itself, being subordinate to, and dependent on, the principal one. The following examples will show the difference between the two:—

Herr Brown, [den du kennst] ist nach Amerika gegangen [wo er einige Zeit bleiben wird].

Mr. Brown, [whom you know] is gone to America [where he will remain for some time].

Er segelte von Liverpool, [das er zum erstenmal sah], in einem sehr schönen Schiff, [das seinem Bruder gehört].

He sailed from Liverpool, [which he saw for the first time], in a very fine ship, [which belongs to his brother].

[Obgleich das Wetter sehr stürmisch war], machte es die Ueberfahrt binnen der gewöhnlichen Zeit, und [sobald er ein wenig ausgeruht hatte], ging er von New-York nach Boston.

[Although the weather was very rough], she made the passage within the usual time, and [as soon as he had rested himself a little], he proceeded from New York to Boston.

Leave out all that is enclosed in brackets, and you will still have a connected narrative; *e. g.*, taking for brevity's sake the English version alone:—

Mr. Brown is gone to America. He sailed from Liverpool in a very fine ship. She made the passage in the usual time, and he proceeded from New York to Boston.

On the other hand, the sentences enclosed in brackets [whom you know]; [where he expects to stay for some time]; [which belongs to his brother]; [although the weather was very rough]; [as soon as he had rested himself]; would never make any sense,\* whether taken all of them together, or separately; nor could any of them stand by itself.

The former sentences, therefore, which taken by themselves still form a narrative, are principal, the others, in brackets, accessory sentences.

---

\* Of course, this is meant in a grammatical point of view. A sentence may be of perfectly correct grammatical composition, and yet contain arrant nonsense.

*Remark 2.* The non-conjugated parts of the verb, viz., the participle past of the past tenses, and the infinitive of the future and of the future conditional, are, as a rule, placed behind all the other parts of speech, without regard to the position of the direct conjugated verb. When there is an infinitive and a participle, the infinitive stands after the participle. In an accessory sentence, the direct conjugated verb takes its place quite last, even after the participle and infinitive. For examples, see the preliminary chapter.

*Remark 3.* Accessory sentences are constituted—

- a.* by means of a relative pronoun or relative adverb (*wo, wie, wann, etc.*);
- b.* by constructive conjunctions—
  - Of time:—*e. g., als, when;*
  - Of reason:—*e. g., weil, because;*
  - Of condition:—*e. g., wenn, if;*
  - Of assertion:—*e. g., daß, that;*
  - Of concession:—*e. g., obgleich, although.*

In all sentences constructed with conjunctions of this description, the direct conjugated verb stands last:—

*Clive war noch jung, als er nach Indien ging.*

*Clive was still a youth, when he went to India.*

*Er siegte, weil er es ernstlich wollte.*

*He conquered because he had the earnest will to do so.*

*Er siegte, obgleich er nur wenige Truppen dem Feinde entgegenzustellen hatte.*

*He conquered, although\* he had only a small force to oppose the enemy.*

Conjunctions, on the other hand, like *und, and; aber, but; denn, for* and others, which only serve to join sentences without rendering one subordinate to another, do not influence the position of the verb. We, therefore, term them connective conjunctions, in contra-distinction to the constructive ones.

---

\* The conjunctions of concession, *obgleich*, and *obſchon*, have this peculiarity, that they may either be put in this compound form, or with their component parts separate, so as to use *gleich* and *ſchon* adverbially; either *obgleich (obſchon) er nur wenige Truppen hatte*; or, *ob er gleich (ob er ſchon) nur wenige Truppen hatte*.

*Remark 4.* Accessory sentences, constituted by relative pronouns, may be generally looked upon as enlarged adjectives; *e.g.*, take the phrase, "a charitable man":—enlarging the notion expressed by the adjective "charitable" into an accessory sentence, you might say, "a man, who freely and kindly gives charity to the poor"; instead of "a virtuous man," you might say, "a man who practises virtue for virtue's sake"; and, to choose even a more simple example, instead of "a wise man,"—"a man who is wise."

The rule in German which requires the verb in the accessory sentence to stand last, is not so foreign to the spirit of the English language as might at first appear. An accessory sentence should be considered in the light of one compound word, in which the verb, as conveying the principal notion, forms the concluding portion. The subjoined examples will show that to a certain extent the same principle is followed in English with regard to the verb, although not in its conjugated form. In the compounds, leather-seller, truth-teller, sheep-stealer, the concluding portion is formed by nouns directly derived from verbs; in all of them, therefore, the verbal part (seller, teller, stealer) is placed after that which is originally substantive. Now, changing these words into simple substantives followed by an accessory sentence, you will say in English, a man, who sells leather, but in German, "a man who leather-sells, ein Mann welcher Leder verkauft;" in English, a man who tells the truth; in German, "a man, who truth-tells, ein Mann, der die Wahrheit spricht;" in English, "a man, who steals sheep; in German, "a man, who sheep-steals, ein Mann, welcher Schafe stiehlt." Speaking of a stationer you might say,—

Ein Mann, welcher Bücher, Federn, Dinte, Papier, Oblaten, Siegellack, Federmesser, u. s. w., verkauft.

A man who books, pens, ink, paper, wafers, sealing-wax, penknives, etc., sells.

A book-, pen-, ink-, paper-, wafer-, sealing-wax-, penknife-, etc., seller.

This phrase, spelt as one word would certainly be one of that gigantic sort which Count Platen in one of his comedies calls *weltflugelumfegende Worte*, globe-of-the-earth-circumnavigating words, but its very length may serve to show the principle on which the accessory sentence is arranged in German, and it may at all events be remembered as a guide.

*Remark 5.* The subject as well as the predicative parts may be enlarged into an accessory sentence by means of a conjunction. In arranging the whole sentence, you treat the composite factors

as you would the simple ones; that is to say, the accessory sentences as you would substantives or adverbs, placing them, as the case may be, either before or after the conjugated verb, which (see Rule I. of this chapter) must always stand second (of the three factors).

*Examples.*

A	B	C
Seine Aufrichtigkeit or, Daß er so aufrichtig ist	} freut	miß
His frankness or, That he is so frank	} pleases	me.
C	B	A
Mich	freut	{ seine Aufrichtigkeit, or, daß er so aufrichtig ist.
<hr/>		
A	B	C
Ich	liebe ihn	{ seiner Aufrichtigkeit wegen, or, weil er so aufrichtig ist.
I	love him	{ for his frankness, or, because he is so frank.
C	B	A
Seiner Aufrichtigkeit wegen, or, Weil er so aufrichtig ist.	} liebe	ich ihn.
<hr/>		

Suppose, you were a short time ago in London; then you may speak of that time either as "lately," or, "when I was in London;" consequently:—

A	B	C
Herr Schulze	sang	{ neulich, or, während ich in London war.
Mr. Schulze	sang	{ lately, or, whilst I was in London.
C	B	A
Neulich, or, Während ich in London war	} sang	Herr Schulze.
<hr/>		

*Examples*

of gradual enlargement of the subject and the predicative portion.

*Single sentence of two factors:—*

Herr Schulze lebt.

Mr. Schulze is living.

*Principal sentences of three factors.*

A.—Subject.      B.—Conjugated Verb.      C.—Predicative Portion.

A	B	C
Herr Müller	starb	gestern
Mr. Müller	died	yesterday.
C	B	A
Gestern	starb	Herr Müller.
A	B	C
Herr Müller, den Sie voriges Jahr in Hamburg trafen,	starb	während ich in Berlin war.
Mr. Müller, whom you met last year in Hamburg,	died	whilst I was in Berlin.
C	B	A
Während ich in Berlin war,	starb	Herr Müller, den Sie voriges Jahr in Hamburg trafen.
A	B	C
Herr Müller, den Sie voriges Jahr in Hamburg trafen, als Sie Ihren Bruder besuchten,	starb	während ich in Berlin war, wo ich wichtige Geschäfte hatte.
Mr. Müller, you met last year at Hamburg, when you were on a visit at your brother's,	died	whilst I was in Berlin, where I had important business.
C	B	A
Während ich in Berlin war, wo ich wichtige Geschäfte hatte,	starb	Herr Müller, den Sie voriges Jahr in Hamburg trafen, als Sie Ihren Bruder besuchten.

With the verbs in the compound tenses:—

A	B	C
Herr Müller	ist	gestern gestorben.
C	B	A
Gestern	ist	Herr Müller gestorben.
A	B	C
Herr Müller, dessen Sie sich erinnern werden, (whom you remember)	ist	gestern gestorben.
C	B	A
Gestern	ist	Herr Müller, dessen Sie sich erinnern werden, gestorben.
A	B	C
Herr Müller, dessen Sie sich erinnern werden, da Sie ihn voriges Jahr in Hamburg getroffen haben,	ist	während ich in Berlin war, gestorben.*
C	B	A
Während ich in Berlin war, wo ich wichtige Geschäfte abzumachen hatte,	ist	Herr Müller, dessen Sie sich erinnern werden, da Sie ihn voriges Jahr in Hamburg getroffen haben, gestorben.*

\* It is better, to say, *ist gestorben, während ich, etc., and, ist Herr Müller gestorben, dessen, etc.* You should not put the non-conjugated parts of the verb further back than you can help.

*Remark 6.* Any part of speech intimately connected with the conjugated verb, is generally, in the principal sentence, put after all others. We have seen this rule applied in the case of the non-conjugated parts of the verb (infinitive and participle past), which, of course, are the parts of speech most intimately connected with the direct verb. On the same principle, adverbs by which the action of the verb is qualified or modified, or any phrases which are meant to complete the notion expressed by the verb, are put at the end of the sentence; *e.g.*,

Ich arbeitete gestern Morgen sehr fleißig.

I worked yesterday morning very diligently.

In this sentence the action of the verb is qualified, (that is to say, the manner in which I did the work is shown) by the adverb *fleißig*, which therefore is put at the end.

Ich arbeitete gestern sehr fleißig in meinem Garten.

I worked yesterday very diligently in my garden.

In this sentence, the phrase, *in meinem Garten*, shows the sort of work which I did, *viz.*, gardening, not merely working in a general way; in other terms, it completes the notion expressed by the verb. The phrase, *in meinem Garten*, is, therefore, put last.

When the verb of these sentences is in one of the compound tenses, the predicative parts are arranged as is shown in the preceding examples, but the non-conjugated parts stand quite last; *e.g.*—

Ich habe diesen Morgen sehr fleißig gearbeitet.

Ich werde Morgen sehr fleißig in meinem Garten arbeiten.

*Remark 7.* In the accessory sentence, all the parts of speech, with the exception of the conjugated verb, are arranged according to the same principles as in the principal sentence:—

Ich bin müde, weil ich diesen Morgen sehr fleißig in meinem Garten gearbeitet habe.

I am tired, because I have worked very hard in my garden this morning.

*Remark 8.* The compound separable verbs are treated on exactly the same principle. The component particle, serving to complete or to qualify the notion expressed by the verb, is, in the principal sentence, put after the conjugated verb, and after all the predicative parts. When the verb is in one of the compound tenses, the non-conjugated part is put quite last; and, as it thus comes to stand



near the component particle, the two are spelt as one word; as is also done in the accessory sentence, where the conjugated verb, being put last, is likewise spelt as one word with the component particle.

*Examples.*

*Aufstehen, to rise, to get up.* Component particle, auf;  
partic. past, aufgestanden; indirect infinit., aufzustehen.

*Ich stand gestern } um sieben Uhr auf.*  
*Gestern stand ich }*

*Ich bin die ganze Woche um sieben Uhr aufgestanden.*

*Ich werde morgen früh um sieben Uhr aufstehen.*

*Ich bin genöthigt, morgen früh um sieben Uhr aufzustehen.*  
(I am obliged)

The separation takes place also in the imperative:—

(*Sich anziehen, to dress.*)

*Steh' sogleich auf, und zieh' dich an.*

Get up immediately, and dress.

On the other hand, the verb is spelt as one word with the component particle, when in the accessory sentence the two stand together at the end:—

*Es war noch dunkel, als ich diesen Morgen aufstand.*

It was still dark, when I got up this morning.

*Mem. 1.*—The component particle may be:—

- a. A noun, as *Theil-nehmen*, to take a part, *i.e.*, to partake;
- b. and adjective, as, *feil-bieten*, to offer something as saleable, *i.e.*, to expose for sale;
- c. an adverb, as, *zurück-kehren*, to turn back, *i.e.*, to return;
- d. with a preposition (used adverbially), as, *auf-steigen*, to climb up, *i.e.*, to ascend.

Verbs compounded with the prepositions:—

*hinter e.g., hintergehen*, to deceive,  
*über — übersetzen*, to translate,  
*unter — unternehmen* to undertake,  
*um — umgeben*, to surround,

are inseparable when the preposition having lost its independent adverbial meaning, has completely merged in the verb; which likewise by this

combination acquires quite a different bearing,\* especially when it is changed from a neuter into a transitive verb. Thus, *über-gehen*, to pass over, as a neuter verb in phrases, such as "he passed over to the enemy," is separable, *er ging zum Feinde über*; but it is inseparable when used as a transitive, in phrases such as, "the speaker passed over the rest in silence," *der Redner übergang das Andere mit Stillschweigen*. All these verbs, when they are inseparable are pronounced with the principal accent upon the verbal part, and when they are neuter, upon the component particle; *e.g.*, *übersetzen*, to translate; *übergehen*, to go over.

*Mem. 2.*—The inseparable compound verbs, as has been stated before, do not take the prefix of the participle past (*übersetzen*, to translate; partic. past, *übersetzt*; *unternehmen*, partic. past, *unternommen*); the preposition *zu* of the indirect infinitive is put before the compound verb, not between the component particle and the verb; thus you say, *zu unternehmen*, *zu hintergehen*, NOT, *unternehmen*, nor, *hintergehen*.

*Mem. 3.*—Verbs compounded with *wider*; *e.g.*, *widerlegen*, to refute, *widerstreben*, to be repugnant, and also *wiederholen*, to repeat, are inseparable.

*Mem. 4.*—The verbs, *vollziehen*, *vollbringen*, *vollenenden*, *vollführen*, to execute or accomplish, are inseparable; but the verbs, in which *voll*, full, has its original physical meaning; *e.g.*, *vollgießen*, to fill with liquid; *vollstopfen*, to cram full, are separable.

*Mem. 5.*—Verbs compounded with *miß*; *e.g.*, *mißlingen*, to miscarry; *mißtrauen*, to mistrust, are inseparable.†

*Mem. 6.*—Verbs with enclitical prefixes (see Sect. I., Chap. IV., Rem. 3.), may also be compounded with separable particles; *e.g.*, *anvertrauen*, to entrust; *anerkennen*, to acknowledge. The only difference in their case is, that they do not take the prefix of the participle past. *Er vertraute mir das Geheimniß an*, he entrusted the secret to me; *er hat mir das Geheimniß anvertraut*; *er war genöthigt* (obliged), *es mir anzuvertrauen*. The same rule applies to the verbs ending in *-iren* or *-ieren* (see the same page). *Das Regiment marschirte gestern durch*; *das ganze Regiment ist durchmarschirt*; *das Regiment hat Befehl* (orders) *durchzumarschiren*.

*Mem. 7.*—Verbs derived from compound nouns, are treated as simple verbs; *e.g.*, *frühstücken*, to breakfast, from *Frühstück*, breakfast; *argwöhnen*, to suspect, from *Argwohn*, suspicion; therefore, partic. past, *gefrühstückt*, *geargwöhnt*; indirect infinitive, *zu frühstücken*, *zu argwöhnen*.

\* A parallel case may be found in the English: "to set up," and "to upset," in the latter of which the verb and the particle have acquired quite a different bearing from what they have in the former.

† Instances are found in very good writers of the partic. past. of some of these verbs being formed with the prefix; *e.g.*, *gemißhandelt*, *gemißbilligt*; this should not, however, be imitated. With neuter verbs it would be decidedly wrong.

*Remark 9.* When, in the principal sentence, the notion expressed by the verb is to be negated, the negative particle is put after the predicative portion. When the verb is in a compound tense, the negative is put after the other predicative parts, but before the non-conjugated parts of the verb, which, according to the rule, are to be placed last. When there are other parts of speech intimately connected with the verb (see Remark 6), the negative is likewise put after the other predicative parts, but before the parts intimately connected with the verb.

*Examples.*

Ich kenne diesen Herrn nicht.

Ich habe diesen Herrn nicht erkannt (recognized).

Ich arbeitete gestern nicht.

Ich arbeitete gestern nicht in meinem Garten.

Ich habe die ganze Woche nicht in meinem Garten gearbeitet.

In any other instance, the negative is placed immediately before that part of the sentence to which it applies.\* Thus we may say, according to the different meaning which we wish to express:—

Er meldete mir gestern die erfreuliche Nachricht nicht.

He did not report to me yesterday the joyful news.

Er meldete nicht mir gestern die erfreuliche Nachricht;

*i. e.*, not to me, but to some one else.

Er meldete mir nicht gestern die erfreuliche Nachricht;

*i. e.*, not yesterday, but at some other time.

Er meldete mir gestern nicht die erfreuliche Nachricht;

*i. e.*, not the joyful news, but something else.

Er meldete mir gestern die nicht erfreuliche Nachricht;

*i. e.*, the news which is not joyful.

With regard to the accessory sentence, you are to follow also in this respect the rule laid down in Remark 7.

---

\* As an exception to this rule may be considered noch nicht, "not yet," where the negative does not precede, but follows, the adverb affected by it.

*Concluding Remark.*

All the rules concerning the position of the different parts of speech in the sentence, are frequently infringed in poetry, where you will find irregularities of construction which would be inadmissible in the common style, but are tolerated, sometimes even required, in the emphatic speech of the epic or dramatic poem. You should, therefore, be cautious in taking poetry for your guide in prose composition, as it is very apt to lead you into all sorts of ludicrous blunders.

## SECTION III. — THE SPEECH.

### CHAPTER I.

#### ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLES.

*Remark 1.* The definite article, in English, particularizes. In German, it has the effect both of generalizing, and of particularizing. The German language, therefore, uses it in all those instances where the English does; and in certain others besides, where the English does not. You say in English,—

the history of the crusades;  
the virtue of speaking the truth;  
the vice of lying;  
the iron of this ship;

and, likewise, in German,—

die Geschichte der Kreuzzüge;  
die Tugend der Wahrhaftigkeit;  
das Laster der Lügenhaftigkeit;  
das Eisen an diesem Schiffe.

In the foregoing examples, the notion of history, virtue, vice, iron, is particularized; that is to say, a particular part of history, a particular description of virtue or vice, a particular quantity of iron, are pointed out. Speaking, on the other hand, of history, virtue, vice, iron, in a general way, you do not, in English, use the article; but in German, you use it; *e. g.*,

History is the best teacher of politics.  
Die Geschichte ist die beste Lehrerin der Staatskunst.  
Virtue is its own reward.  
Die Tugend ist ihr eigener Lohn.  
Vice never prospers in the end.  
Das Laster hat nie ein glückliches Ende.  
Iron is less heavy than gold.  
Das Eisen ist nicht so schwer als das Gold.

When the whole of the species expressed by the noun is meant to be spoken of, either the singular or the plural number may be used, but always with the definite article:—

Der Mensch ist sterblich;  
*or*, die Menschen sind sterblich.  
 Man is, *or* men are, mortal.

In the same way, you say in English, *the* rose is a favourite flower of mine; *the* hippopotamus is a fierce brute; *the* wren feeds on insects; meaning the whole species, not merely an individual specimen of it. In German, the definite article is always required when man, animals, notions or substances are thus spoken of in a general sense.

*Remark 2.* The definite article is to be used with certain proper names of countries and provinces, of which the following may be mentioned as the principal:—

die Schweiz, Switzerland	die Moldau, Moldavia
die Krim, the Crimea	die Wallachei, Wallachia
die Lausitz, Lusatia	die Türkei, Turkey
die Ukraine, Ukraine	die Berberei, Barbary
die Krain, Carniola	die Bucharei, Bokhara.

The names of all these countries are used in the feminine gender. The article is also put with some others which are neuter, and with the name of a few towns:—

das Tyrol, Tyrol	das Elßaß, Alsace
das Friaul, Friuli	das Haag, the Hague
das Veltelin, Valteline	das Havre, Havre ( <i>le Havre</i> ).

With the names of other countries, as also with those of persons, the article is only put, when they are preceded by an adjective:—

das fröhliche Alt-England, merry Old England;  
 der alte Blücher, old Blücher;  
 der junge Herr Copperfield, young Mr. Copperfield.

The definite article is sometimes used, in familiar conversation, before the Christian names of persons belonging to the family, or to the circle of intimate acquaintances of the person who speaks, or who is spoken to: *die* Marie, *der* Heinrich, where you say in English, our Mary, our Henry. Children will also speak of their father and mother, as, *der* Vater, *die* Mutter.

**Remark 3.** The indefinite article is used as in English, except in some phrases where the noun stands in the position of a predicate; *e.g.*, "he is a soldier; he is a sailor; he is an officer; he is an admiral," etc. In German, the noun thus used as a predicate, does not take the article when it means a calling or the station of a person. Those phrases would, therefore, be in German: "er ist Soldat; er ist Seemann; er ist Offizier; er ist Admiral."

But, when the noun means a trade; or, likewise, when the noun used as a predicate is preceded by an adjective, it must be construed with the indefinite article:—*Er ist ein Schuhmacher; er war ein tapferer Soldat; er ist ein vortrefflicher Offizier* (he is a shoemaker; he was a brave soldier; he is an excellent officer).

**Remark 4.** It has been stated, in Remark 1., that the definite article in German generalizes as well as particularizes. We say, therefore,—

*a. generalizing:*—*das Wasser ist oft gefährlicher als das Feuer*, water is sometimes more dangerous than fire.

*das Brod und der Wein sind hier zu Lande sehr theuer*, wine and bread are very dear in this country;

*b. particularizing:*—*das Wasser der Themse*, the water of the Thames;  
*das Feuer in der Küche*, the fire in the kitchen;  
*das Brod unseres Bäckers*, the bread of our baker;  
*der Wein in unserem Keller*, the wine in our cellar.

When, on the other hand, the notion expressed by the noun is neither generalized, nor particularized, but to be understood as indefinite with regard to quantity or number, or identity, the noun is used without an article. We say, therefore:—

*Geben Sie mir Wasser, Brod, Wein*, give me (some) water, (some) bread, (some) wine;

and, to choose an example from a description of Newmarket races,—

*Herzoge, Lords, Spießhuten, Stallknechte, alles wettet mit einander*.

Dukes, Lords, black-legs, grooms, all bet against each other.

In the first of these examples, it is not stated, what sort or quantity of water, wine, you wish to ask for; in the second, the dukes, lords, blacklegs, and grooms are spoken of without its being pointed out, how many or which dukes, lords, etc., were betting; the nouns, *Wasser*, etc., *Herzoge*, etc., are therefore to be understood as indefinite with regard to quantity, number, and identity, and to be used here without an article.

*Remark 5.* The definite article is omitted in German, the same as in English, when a noun is placed after a genitive governed by it, especially after the genitive of the relative pronoun:—

*Ich lese Schiller's Werke.* I am reading Schiller's works.

*Ich bewundere Schiller, dessen Werke ich lese.* I admire Schiller, whose works I am reading.

## CHAPTER II.

### ON THE PRONOUNS.

*Remark 1.* Besides the anomalies of address, mentioned in the first Section, of using the third person plural (*Sie*), instead of the second person singular or plural (*du*, and *ihr*), it is necessary to know, rather for the purpose of reading, than for actual use, that—

- a. the second person plural, *Ihr*, is generally used in high tragedy as the address of chivalrous courtesy. This mode of address, which, some twenty or thirty years ago, in the practice of every day life used to be employed mostly with persons belonging to the peasantry, seems now to gain ground again among the cultivated classes of society;
- b. the third person singular, *er* and *sie*\* (instead of *du*), was used as address, at first, of courtesy, with equals; then, of half courtesy and half familiarity; and, at last, only in speaking to menials.

It is now all but obsolete; and the younger generation, even of most humble pretensions, especially that of Northern Germany, would feel highly indignant to be addressed in the style, which the Empress Maria Theresa, to the last day of her life, used with every one of her court, not even excepting her first minister of state.

\* Not to be confounded with the plural *Sie*. Speaking in the third person singular, you would say, *komm' sie herein*, or *ist sie in der Kirche gewesen?* in the third person plural, *kommen Sie herein; sind Sie in der Kirche gewesen?*



In devotional and pathetic language, and likewise in adages and moral precepts, the natural mode of address, but with an individual, *ich* with a number of individuals, must be used. It is, of course, the style of the Bible. Speeches of the classical age of Rome and Greece are likewise to be rendered in the natural mode of address. Wieland, in his otherwise most excellent translation of Cicero's letters, makes the old orator address his friends with the courteous *Sie* of the plural. It was rather admired at the time, but reads very strange now-a-days.

The anomaly of using the plural instead of the singular, has originated not in German, but in Latin. The plural *nos*, used by authors, which has survived to this day, particularly in the editorial "We" of the newspapers, became in the edicts of Constantine, Theodosius, and Justinian, the *pluralis majestaticus*, and was afterwards adopted by Charlemagne, Pepin, and all their successors. *Sir*, the plural of the first person, was soon responded to by the plural of the second person, *Sir*. This mode of address which in Germany was in use among persons of rank as early as the ninth century, remained the general style of courtesy until the beginning of the seventeenth, when it was exchanged for the third person singular, *er* and *sie*. Just as even now the French will address a stranger as if they were speaking not to himself, but, of him as a third person; (*e.g.*, *est-ce que Monsieur*, or, as the case may be, *Madame, a-t-elle se promener?* instead of, *est-ce que vous avez été vous promener?*); thus, in German, *der Herr*, *die Frau*, was used instead of *Sir*; *e.g.*, *wie befindet sich der Herr*, or, *die Frau*? how does the gentleman, or, the lady, instead of, how do you do? *Er* and *sie*, therefore, were substituted for *der Herr*, *die Frau*.

The use of the third person plural originated with the custom of addressing princes and persons of rank in phrases, like, *Eure Majestät*, *Ihro Gnaden* (Your Grace), and *Eure Liebden* (Your Belovedness, used among princes of equal, or by those of higher with those of lower rank, as *e.g.*, by the Emperor with Electors and Dukes). The substantive in the phrases, *Ihro Gnaden*, *Eure Liebden* and others, being in the plural, it was supplied in the sequel *o.* the speech by the personal pronoun of the third person plural, *Sie*.\* It

---

\* J. Grimm rejects this explanation, and treats the introduction of this use of the third personal plural as an absurdity resting on no tangible foundation whatever. With every due deference to such an eminent authority, the opinion given in the text claims to be the correct one. It is supported among others, by the last letter of the Emperor Ferdinand II. to Wallenstein (dated 13th February, 1634), in which *Eure Liebden*, and after it the plural *Sie* is used, as may be seen from the following passage, interlarded in the preposterous fashion of those days with a non-descript foreign phrase:—

Ferner habe ich auch Ew. Liebden jüngsthin erinnert, daß Sie solche eventual ordinanz wollten abgeben lassen — —

Moreover, I have lately reminded Your Belovedness, that you should send such an eventual order — —

was not until the middle of the eighteenth century that the *Sie* of the third person plural became the general mode of address of the fashionable world. But at the same time *bu*, as familiar style, besides *er* and *sie* of the singular, were retained each in its distinct sphere. When *er* and *sie* were fashionable, *3hr* became "low"; when *Sie* carried the day, *er* and *sie* in their turn lost caste, and, ranking even below *3hr*, were gradually made over to the servants' room, in which they are now likewise tabooed. It is to be hoped that the absurd address of *Sie* will in the course of time share the same fate, but, until that desirable result is brought about, the English should take care in speaking or writing German not to "thou" (*duzen*) a person with whom they are not on a footing of intimacy; and, on the other hand, not to use the *Sie* of courtesy in the wrong place. An example of this latter sort of mistake may not be uninteresting. A very beautiful monologue in Schiller's "Maid of Orleans," in which Joan of Arc is taking leave of her old haunts, begins with the following lines:

Lebt wohl ihr Berge, ihr geliebten Triften,  
 3hr traulich stillen Thäler, lebet wohl,  
 Johanna wird nun nimmer auf euch wandeln,  
 Johanna sagt euch ewig Lebewohl.  
 Fare well, ye mountains, ye beloved pastures,  
 Ye homely quiet valleys, fare ye well,  
 Ne'er more Joanna tends on you her flocks,  
 For ever, then, for ever fare ye well.

A well-known, very clever German actor, who in the Character of "the travelling Englishman" amused none more than the English residents themselves, gave in one of his performances the following version of those lines:—

Leben Sie wohl, Sie Berge, Sie geliebten Triften,  
 Sie traulich stillen Thäler, leben Sie wohl,  
 Johanna wird nun nimmer auf Ihnen wandeln,  
 Johanna sagt Ihnen ewig Leben Sie wohl.

Wallenstein's Duchess addresses him in her letters with *mein Herr*, and *er*, a style which is likewise used in the following note, written by Wallenstein on the eve of the battle of Lützen (15th November, 1632), to recall Pappenheim from Halle:—

Der Feind marschirt hereinwärts, der Herr lasse alles stehen, liegen, und incaminire sich mit allem volk und stücken, auf daß er morgen früh sich bei uns befindet.

The enemy is marching in this direction, let the gentleman (Pappenheim) leave everything behind, and set out with all his people and artillery, so that he may be with us to-morrow morning.

The original of this note is still kept in the archives of Vienna. It is stained with the blood of Pappenheim, who was carrying it about him, when he fell in that battle.

**Remark 2.** The personal and possessive pronouns, referring to one of those nouns of the neuter gender which denote persons of the female sex, *e.g.*, das Frauenzimmer, das Weib, das Mädchen, etc., may be put in the feminine gender, without regard to that grammatical anomaly. Thus we might say:—

Das Mädchen besuchte ihren Bruder.

The young girl went to see her brother.

Das Weib verließ ihren Gatten, da sie ihm nicht folgen durfte.

The wife left her husband, as she was not allowed to follow him.

But the demonstrative and relative pronouns are strictly to agree with the grammatical gender; and it would be wrong to say,—

Diese Weib, welche, instead of,

Dieses Weib, welches.

**Remark 3.** The pronouns have a construction similar to that of the adjective in the form of a predicate. The same as we say:—

Der Vater }  
Die Mutter } ist gut.  
Das Kind }

Die Väter }  
Die Mütter } sind gut.  
Die Kinder }

we employ the pronouns, when used as predicates, in the form of the neuter gender singular:—dieses (abridged dieß), das, jenes, es, whatever may be the gender or number of the subject to which they refer. Thus, we say:—

ich bin }  
du bist } es.\*  
er ist }

wir sind }  
ihr seid } es.\*  
sie sind }

dieß {  
or { ist der Mann.  
ist die Frau.  
das { ist das Kind.

dieß {  
or { sind die Männer.  
sind die Frauen.  
das { sind die Kinder.

In English, you would say, “these are the men”; but in German, you do not, in these instances, mark the gender in the singular, nor the number in the plural; we do not, therefore, say:—dieser ist der Mann, diese ist die Frau; nor, diese sind die Männer, diese sind die Frauen or Kinder.

Es is, moreover, used, as “there” is in English, in phrases such as, “there was once a king and a queen, es war einmal ein König und eine Königin. This mode of speech is employed also with other verbs; *e.g.*,

Es liebt die Welt, das Strahlende zu schwärzen.

The world loves to blacken that which is lustrous.

\* Contracted, ich bins, du bist, etc. We do not say, es bin ich, es bist du; nor es ist ich, es warst du, as you do in English, it is I, it was you.

*Remark 4.* The relative pronoun, which, in English, is sometimes understood, cannot be omitted in German; *e. g.*,

All I have heard of him, speaks in his favour.

Alles, was ich von ihm gehört habe, spricht zu seinen Gunsten.

The house you lately recommended to me, is sold.

Das Haus, das Sie mir neulich empfohlen haben, ist verkauft.

*Remark 5.* The relative pronoun cannot be preceded by any part of speech belonging to the accessory sentences which it forms, except by a preposition either governing the relative pronoun itself, or, when it is in the genitive, by the preposition governing the noun on which that genitive depends; *e. g.*,

We met several people, all of whom had been to see the fire.

Wir begegneten mehreren Leuten, welche alle (*not*, alle von welchen) die Feuerbrunst angesehen hatten.

In translating sentences, such as,—

We met a countryman, with the help of whose directions we easily found our way,

it is better to change the construction altogether:—

Wir begegneten einem Landmann, und mit Hilfe seiner Befehlungen war es uns leicht den Weg zu finden.

*Remark 6.* The relative pronoun can be governed only by parts of speech belonging to the relative sentence itself, not by the verb or other parts belonging to the preceding sentence. In English you may say, "I judge by what I saw." In such instances, the German construction requires an appropriate demonstrative pronoun to be supplied as the objective case of the preceding preposition. That sentence would, therefore, be:—

Ich urtheile nach dem, was ich sah.

I judge by *that* which I saw.

Constructions, such as, er gibt es wem er will, he gives it to whom he pleases, are to be considered as elliptic sentences, instead of, er gibt es dem, wem er es geben will, he gives it to him, to whom he pleases to give it; and the dative wem is not governed by er gibt in the principal sentence, but, by the infinitive geben, which is understood in the relative sentence.

## CHAPTER III.

## ON THE NOUN.

## A.—NUMBER.

There is in German, as in English, a particular class of nouns which are not used in the plural; and another, which have no singular.

*Remark 1.* The following German nouns, unlike their English equivalents, are not used in the plural:—

Bund, alliance.	Liebe, love.	Streit, dispute.
Dank, thank.	Lob, praise.	Tadel, censure.
Furcht, fear.	Lohn, reward.	Trost, consolation.
Glück, fortune.	Pein, pain.	Verdacht, suspicion.
Jammer, misery.	Raub, robbery.	Verdruß, annoyance.
Kummer, sorrow.	Schmuck, ornament.	Zank, quarrel.

*Rath*, with the meaning of "counsel" is not used in the plural; with the meaning of councillor it makes the plural *Räthe*. *Leben*, life, may be put in the plural, in phrases, such as, "*and if I had a thousand lives*," etc.; but not, when it has the meaning of "biography," (the Lives of the Lord Chancellors). If you want a plural to express "counsels," or lives, meaning, biographies; you are to use other nouns which have one, *e.g.*, *die Rathschläge*, *die Lebensläufe*, or *Lebensbeschreibungen*. The same rule is to be observed with regard to the nouns enumerated above. As you cannot say *Bünde*, you take the plural of *Bündniß*, which makes *Bündnisse*, instead of the plural of *Streit*, you use *Streitigkeiten*, the plural of *Streitigkeit*, etc., etc. *Kinn*, the chin, and *Mund*, mouth (as parts of the face), have no plural, nor do they want one as will presently be seen. The mouth of a river is *Mündung*; you say, therefore, *die Mündungen der Donau*, the mouths of the Danube.

*Remark 2.* The following nouns are used in the plural only:—

Eltern (also spelt Eltern), parents.	Leute, people.
Gebrüder, brothers (in commercial firms).	Masern, measles.
Geschwister, brothers and sisters, or the children of the same parents.	Rötheln, red measles.
Einkünfte, revenue.	Wolken, whey.
Gefälle, rents, duties.	Treber, ground-malt, husks.
Kosten, expense.	Trümmer, ruins.

*Remark 3.* In speaking of several individuals, all of whom are represented as being in the same position, the nouns describing the particulars of their dress and person are frequently put in the same number as if it were only one individual; *e. g.*,

Alle die anwesenden Herren nahmen den Hut ab.

All the gentlemen present took off their hats.

Die Chinesen berühren im Kotu den Fußboden mit der Stirn.

The Chinese, in performing the ceremony of Kotoo, touch the floor with their fore-heads.

Die Narren stecken die Nase in jeden Quark.

Fools poke their noses into every trumpery affair.

Every man wearing only one hat on his head, and having only one fore-head and one nose, Hut, Stirn, Nase, are used in the singular, though, not one, but several persons are spoken of in these examples. Observe also, that in this mode of speaking the definite article is used instead of the possessive pronoun, which latter is deemed superfluous, as it is understood that each took off his own hat, not that of another; each touched the ground with his own fore-head, etc. In the same way, we say, er rüttelte die Achseln, he shrugged his shoulders; er schloß die Augen, he shut his eyes.

*Remark 4.* Most of the nouns masculine and neuter, expressing measure of any kind, are put in the singular, even when they have a plural meaning; *e. g.*, zwei Fuß hoch, two feet high; fünf Zoll breit, five inches broad; ein Heer von 10,000 Mann, an army of 10,000 men. But when these nouns are used in a sense not implying measure, they are put in the plural, whenever it may be required. We say, therefore, meine beiden Füße, my two feet; die Zölle im Hafen von London, the tolls raised in the port of London; die Männer von England, the men of England.

#### B.—USE OF THE DIFFERENT CASES.

*Remark 5.* Nouns placed in apposition to another, are to be put in the same case as the principal noun with which they agree:—

Der Abfall der Niederlande fand statt unter Philipp dem Zweiten, dem Sohn Karls des Fünften.

The revolution of the Netherlands took place under Philip the Second, son of Charles the Fifth.

**Remark 6.** When a noun without an article is to be put in the genitive, it is generally done by means of the preposition *von*:—

*Die Kanonen von drei Batterien waren zum Schweigen gebracht.*  
The cannons of three batteries had been silenced.

The preposition *von* is also used when “of” means “consisting of”, or when the noun construed with it shows a quality of the principal noun; *e.g.*,

*Ein Haus von Stein*, a house of (built of) stone.

*Ein Mann von Ehre*, a man of honour.

*Eine Sache von Wichtigkeit*, an affair of importance.

In all these phrases you might express the same meaning by using adjectives,—

*Ein steinernes Haus*, a stone house.

*Ein ehrenhafter Mann*, an honourable man.

*Eine wichtige Sache*, an important affair.

The case is different when the noun before the preposition “of” is employed in English to express a certain amount of that noun which is governed by the preposition; *e.g.*, a piece of bread, a glass of wine, a pound of meat, etc. In these instances, the second noun is in German put in apposition to the other, when the rule holds good which is stated in Remark 5. You say, therefore, *geben Sie mir ein Glas rothen Wein* (not *rothen Weins*); *ein Stück schwarzes Brod* (not *schwarzen Brods*); *ein Pfund weißen Zucker* (nor *weißen Zuckers*). The genitive (*rothen Weins*, etc.), which used formerly to be employed also in these and similar phrases, would, in the style of the present day, be deemed rather out of place here.

**Remark 7.** There were formerly many more verbs construed with the genitive than now; and even of those which are still construed with it, many are already wavering between the genitive and accusative, or also the construction with a preposition. In the following list, those verbs only are comprised which, according to the rules of the present style, require the genitive.

*a.* Intransitive verbs with the simple genitive:—

*ermangeln* (or *mangeln*), to be defective in  
*gedenken*, to remember

*harren*, to wait for  
*spotten*, to rail at.

*Gedenket seiner Großmuth, seiner Milde,*  
Remember his generosity and benevolence.  
*Ich spotte deiner Drohung,*  
I rail at (I despise) your threat.

**b. Reflective verbs with the genitive:—**

sich annehmen, to take the part of —	sich entsinnen, to remember
— bedienen, to make use of —	— erinnern, to remember
— befehlen, to apply oneself to —	— erwehren, to ward off —
— begeben, to renounce	— getrüsten, to trust in —
— bemächtigen, to get hold of —	— überheben, to take pride in —
— bemeistern, to make oneself master of —	— unterfangen, to venture upon —
— entäußern, to abstain from —	— unterwinden, to venture upon
— enthalten, to abstain from —	— vermessen, to venture upon —
— entschlagen, to abstain from —	— versehen, to be prepared for —
	— weigern, to refuse.

Mehrere Fürsten nahmen sich des unglücklichen Prinzen an.

Several potentates took the part of the unfortunate prince.

**c. Transitive verbs governing the accusative of the noun which is affected by their action, and the genitive of that noun with regard to which the other is acted upon:—**

anklagen, to accuse of —	entlassen, to dismiss from —
berauben, to rob of —	entleiben, to deliver from —
beschuldigen, to accuse of —	entsetzen, to deprive of —
entbinden, to release from —	überführen, to convict of —
entheben, to release from —	überheben, to deliver from —
entleiden, to divert from —	würbigen, to honour with —

Der Löwe würbige den Hasen seiner nähern Bekanntschaft.

The lion honoured the hare with his intimate acquaintance.

**d. The following adjectives are construed with the genitive of the object:—**

bedürftig, } standing in need of	lebig, freed from
benötigt, }	los, rid of
bewußt, conscious of	theilhaftig, partaking of
eingedenk, mindful of	verlustig, having lost, or, forfeited
gewärtig, aware of	überdrüssig, tired of
gewiß, certain of	fatt, having had enough of
fähig, capable of	müde, weary of
kenbig, acquainted with	fröh, rejoicing in
mächtig, being master of	gewohnt, accustomed to
schuldig, guilty of	wert, worthy of
verdächtig, suspected of	würdig, worthy of.

Die Grafen Egmont und Horn wurden des Hochverraths für schuldig, und aller ihrer Würden für verlustig erklärt.

The counts of Egmont and Horn were pronounced guilty of high-treason, and having forfeited all their dignities and honours.



*Worth* generally governs the genitive, when like *würdig* it means worthy in the moral sense; when it means the value in money, etc. it governs the accusative case.

*Er ist des besten Loses werth.*

He is worthy of the best happiness.

*Dieses Messer ist einen Gulden werth.*

This knife is worth a florin.

*Gewohnt*, and *los* also construed with the accusative:—

*Ich bin das gewohnt, I am used to that.*

*Ich bin ihn los, I have got rid of him.*

*Los*, in this meaning, is used exclusively in the undeclined predicative form; in the declined (attributive) form it means “loose.”

*Voll*, is sometimes construed with the accusative when the noun governed by it is not preceded by an adjective; especially when another noun is joined to it; e.g., *voll Muth und Kraft*, full of courage and energy; *voll Blut und Wunden*, full of gore and wounds. In some constructions, it is to be considered as being one word with the noun before it, just as in English, you say, a handful, a mouthful. And the same as in the phrase, *geben Sie mir ein Glas rothen Wein*; you have *rothen Wein* put in apposition to *Glas* (see Remark 1.); you may say, *mit einem Herzen voll freudigem Muth*. A very precise writer would, however, also in these cases prefer the genitive. Another peculiarity of *voll* is this. When governing a noun of the feminine gender or one in the plural, it sometimes takes itself the articular ending of the genitive feminine (which is the same as that of the genitive plural); *der Mann war voller Freude*, or *Freuden*, the man was full of joy (as it were, of full joy, as you say in English, of good cheer).

*Remark 8.* The genitive of the noun is used adverbially to express indefinite time; and sometimes also local position, or direction.

*a. Indefinite time:—*

*Abends, Morgens*, in the morning, in the evening.

*Sonntags, Montags*, and all the other days of the week, on Sundays, on Mondays, etc., without wanting to state which particular Sunday, Monday, etc.

*Sommers, Winters*,\* in the summer, in the winter (in summertime, wintertime).

*Tags, Nachts*, in day time, at night.

The same, *eines Tags, eines Abends, eines Sonntags*, etc., one day, one evening, one Sunday, etc.

---

\* *Herbst*, autumn, and *Frühling*, spring, in this sense, require a preposition, *im Herbst, im Frühling*.

To express definite time, the simple accusative or a preposition is to be used; *e. g.*,

Nächsten Abend, or am nächsten Abend, next evening;

Letzten Sonntag, or am letzten Sonntag, last Sunday.

Den Morgen nach der Schlacht, in the morning after the battle.

**b. Locality or direction:—**

Rechter, or linker Hand, on the right. *or*, left hand.

figuratively:—

höchsten Orts, in the highest place; geeigneten Orts, in the right place, *e. g.*, “with the highest,” *or*, “with the proper authority”;

des Wegs gehen, *or*, seines Wegs gehen, means, in a general sense, the former, “to go along”; the latter, “to be off”; geh’ deines Wegs “be off.” In this latter instance also the accusative is used, when the direction is more precisely stated; *e. g.*, er geht diesen Weg, *or*, geh’ deinen Weg, ich werde meinen gehen.

There are many more instances of this adverbial use of the genitive in variety of meanings; *e. g.*, jeden Falls, “in any case”; nöthigen Falls, “if necessary,” (in case it should be necessary); meines Wissens, “to my knowledge”; theils—theils, “partly—partly”; meistens, “mostly,” etc., etc. Owing to this tendency of the language to use the genitive adverbially, the ending -s of the genitive of the ancient (strong) declension is put, as we have seen, to adverbs formed from the superlative of the adjective, (höchstens, wenigstens, bestens, etc.); to others like, vorwärts, “forward”; vormalß, “formerly”; vergebens, “in vain”; and, more than that, even to nouns in the plural number, allerthings, “by all means” (verbatim, of all things); neuerdings, “lately”; schlechterdings, “absolutely”; to a noun of the feminine gender, Nachts; and to nouns preceded by prepositions which would require quite a different case, unterwegs, “on one’s way to some place”; vor Alters, “in olden times.”

**Remark 9.** The genitive of exclamation: “O der Schande! Oh, for shame!” “O des lächerlichen Mannes! Oh, what a ridiculous fellow!” is now all but obsolete, and only used in the higher oratorical style.

The latter phrase is from Jean Paul (Richter) who puts it in the mouth of his quaint, absurd and pedantic “Feldprediger Schmeltzle,” where it is quite in character, just because it is so very recondite.

**Remark 10.** The accusative is the case in which the direct object of a transitive verb is to be put; the dative case is assigned to the indirect object:—

Er hat mir sein Geheimniß anvertraut.

He has confided to me his secret.

Ich habe es meiner Schwester gesagt.

I have told it (to) my sister.

This class of verbs is very numerous, and a list of them is rendered superfluous by the coincidence, in this respect, of the English construction with the German. For, notwithstanding the frequent omission of the preposition "to", which supplies the dative in English, you may always find out the case which is required, by turning the sentence into a question. Take for example the sentence, "I have told it my sister." "What have you told?" "It." "To whom have you told it?" "To my sister." Do not however, confound "to," in the sense of motion or direction, for the "to" of the dative. In the sentence, "My friend has sent to me a present," "to" stands in lieu of the dative; in, "My friend has sent his servant to me, "to" expresses direction and motion. We should, therefore, say,—

Mein Freund hat mir ein Geschenk geschickt, but,  
Mein Freund hat seinen Bedienten zu mir\* geschickt.

*Remark 11.* The simple dative case is governed by a certain number of intransitive verbs, of which the following may be mentioned as the principal, and most frequently occurring:—

antworten, to answer  
begegnen, to meet  
danken, to thank  
dienen, to serve  
drohen, to threaten  
fehlen, to fail  
fluchen, to curse  
folgen, to follow  
gefallen, to please  
gehören, to belong  
gehörchen, to obey

gelingen, to succeed  
gleich, to be like  
helfen, to help  
nützen, to be useful to  
schaden, to do injury to  
scheinen, to seem  
schmeicheln, to flatter  
trauen, to trust to  
weichen, to yield to  
ziemen, to suit.

Fehlen has the meaning "to fail"; in the phrase, "my courage failed me," der Muth fehlt mir; in a similar manner we say, die Mittel fehlen ihm, "he is wanting in means; but it is never used in the sense of "fail to do." Gelingen, moreover, is not a subjective verb; you cannot use it in German, so, as to translate; e.g., "I have succeeded in this enterprise," verbatim by "Ich habe in dieser Unternehmung gelungen"; but, you are to say, diese Unternehmung ist mir gelungen, as it were, "this enterprise has succeeded to me."

*Remark 12.* There are some adjectives which govern the dative, others which govern the accusative case.

---

\* To, in, "going to a person," is to be translated by zu; "going to a place," by nach; e.g., ich gehe zu meinem Freund; but, ich gehe nach London.

**a. The dative is governed by—**

ähnlich, similar to	widrig, repugnant to
gleich, equal to, or, like	treu, true to
eigen, peculiar to	lieb, dear
fremd, strange, or, a stranger to	lästig, irksome to
gemäß, appropriate to	nahe, near to
angenehm, agreeable	ferne, far from.

*Ich bin dir nah', seyst du mir noch so ferne.*

*I am near you, be you ever so far from me.*

**b. The accusative is governed by such adjectives only as express measurement of any kind,—weight,—duration of time, etc.; e.g., hoch, high; tief, deep; schwer, heavy (weighing a certain weight); lang, long; breit, broad:—**

*Ein vierzig Fuß tiefer Graben, a fosse, forty feet deep.*

*Ein hundert Pfund schwerer Hammer, a hammer weighing a hundred pounds.*

*Mem.*—The adjective is generally placed behind the case, which it governs.

**Remark 13.** A double accusative is governed only by the verbs *nennen*, to name, or to call; *heißen*, to call; *schimpfen*, to call by way of abuse; and *lehren*, to teach:—

*Er nennt sich einen großen Mann.*

*He calls himself a great man.*

*Er lehrte mich den Gebrauch dieses Instruments.*

*He taught me the use of this instrument.*

As the rules of the English, and also of the Latin and French languages might lead to the mistake of construing in German other verbs besides the above-mentioned, with a double accusative, the difference will be shown by the following example, in which the second object (*König*), is governed by a preposition, not, as in the other languages, as a second accusative by the verb:—

*The nation has made him a king.*

*La nation l'a fait roi.*

*Populus eum fecit regem.*

*Das Volk hat ihn zum König gemacht.*

**Remark 14.** The accusative is used adverbially, as we have seen, to express definite time. This use of it also occurs in phrases like *Hand in Hand*, *Arm in Arm*; and in others, where generally, in English, the preposition “with” is employed; e.g., *da steht der Bursche, Hut auf dem Kopf, und Pfeife im Mund*, here the fellow stands, (with his) hat on (his) head, and (his) pipe in (his) mouth.

*Remark 15.* When the noun, which is put in the accusative after the verb, means a part of the person or dress, or also one of the moral or intellectual faculties of a human being, or a part of the body of an animal, the genitive or possessive pronoun which shows to which human being, or to which animal that part belongs, is generally changed: the noun in the genitive into its own dative; the possessive pronoun into the dative of its corresponding personal pronoun; *e.g.*,

Er drückte mir die Hand (instead of, er drückte meine Hand).

He shook my hand (word for word, he shook to me the hand).

Du hast diesem Mann den Rock zerissen (instead of, den Rock dieses Mannes).

You have torn the coat of this man (word for word, you have torn the coat to this man).

Ich habe diesem Vogel die Flügel beschnitten (instead of, die Flügel dieses Vogels).

I have clipped the wings of this bird (word for word, I have clipped to this bird the wings).

Sometimes the construction is put in this way:—

Der Hund hat mich in das Bein gebissen.

The dog has bitten my leg (me in the leg).

Sie hat sich in den Finger geschnitten.

She has cut her finger (herself in the finger).

This latter construction has its counterpart in English phrases; such as, "he shot him through the heart," or, "he stabbed him in the arm"; whilst the sentence, *du hast diesem Mann den Rock zerissen*, which is grammatically quite correct in German, might be compared with the English vulgar speech, "I shall tear your coat for you."

The same change is made use of with the genitive or possessive pronoun belonging to other nouns after the verb besides the direct accusative governed by it; *e.g.*,

Er warf uns den Brief in das Fenster.

He threw the letter into our window.

## CHAPTER IV.

## ON THE VERB.

## A.—USE OF THE TENSES.

*Remark 1.* The present tense is made use of not only in speaking of the time present, but —

*a.* When, in the midst of historical narrative, it is evident from the context that a past time is spoken of, past events may be treated as present, for the purpose of enlivening the description. Thus, we find in Schiller, in imitation of Cæsar's celebrated *veni, vidi, vici*, the phrase, *er kommt, er sieht, er liebt*.

*b.* Whenever the future time is expressed by an adverb or any other part of speech, the verb may be put, and is generally put, in the present tense:—

Gehen Sie diesen Abend ins Theater?

Will you go this evening to the theatre?

Herr Müller reist nächste Woche nach Amerika ab.

Mr. Müller will start next week for America.

*Remark 2.* The Imperfect, or Relative Past, is the tense employed in the narrative of past events, with reference to the time when they happened, or to other events which happened, or are represented to have happened, at the same time. When you give a connected narrative of events from history, you are stating facts with reference to the period when they happened, and which, from their very nature as historical events, must be connected with, and have reference to, other events which happened at the same time. You, therefore, are to use, in these instances, the verb in the relative past (imperfect).

The Perfect, or Absolute Past, on the other hand, is used in speaking of a past event simply as past, without any reference to the time when it happened, or to any other event which might have happened at the same time.

We say, in a narrative of the discovery of America:—

Columbus war der erste, welcher aus dem Boote sprang und die von ihm entdeckte neue Welt betrat.

Columbus was the first who jumped from the boat and trod on (the soil of) the new world discovered by him.

But, speaking of the discovery of America simply as a past event, without reference to the time when it happened, nor to other contemporaneous events, you are to put the verb in the absolute past:—

Columbus hat Amerika entdeckt.

This rule is greatly neglected, especially in conversation, where the absolute past (perfect) is only too often substituted for the relative past (imperfect). The absolute past may correctly be used in sentences, stating a simple event, when the fact, which happened, not the time, at which it happened, forms the most important part of the statement; *e.g.*, you would say correctly, diesen Morgen ist Herr Müller gestorben; because in such a communication the most important point would be his death, not the time of his death. But, you should use the relative past in the question, Wann starb er? the correct answer to which would be, er starb diesen Morgen; because in these phrases the time at which the melancholy event happened, is most directly referred to. It is quite wrong to say—although you may frequently meet with such phrases—während ich im Garten war, hat ein Vogel gesungen. In this instance, the relative past is the correct tense; therefore,—während ich im Garten war, sang ein Vogel.

**Remark 3.** The Pluperfect, or Anterior Past, is made use of in speaking of events which had happened before the time to which the principal narrative refers:—

Philipp hatte Egmonts Tod beschlossen, als er Alba nach Brüssel schickte.

Philip had (already) determined Egmont's death, when he sent the Duke of Alva to Brussels.

**Remark 4.** The Future Tense, besides its regular meaning, is used sometimes to express probability: the first future with reference to a present, the second future with reference to a past event:—

Wo ist er? er wird im Garten seyn.

Where is he? "he will be in the garden"; that is to say, "very likely he is in the garden."

Du wirst gehört haben, daß Herr Brown gestorben ist.

I dare say, you have heard, that Mr. Brown is dead.

## B.—USE OF THE MOODS.

*Remark 5.* The Indicative or Direct Mood, is the mood of reality which is made use of in relating events, or stating opinions, for the expression of our own present knowledge or conviction :—

It is sometimes employed, as in English, instead of the imperative, in a severe or overbearing tone :—

Du gehst, "you go," instead of, "go."

Sie schweigt, you hold your tongue.

Sie werden mir morgen das Nähere sagen, you will tell (instead of, tell) me to-morrow the particulars.

*Remark 6.* The Subjunctive or Indirect Mood consists, properly speaking, of the present, of the perfect, and of both the future tenses. As to the imperfect and pluperfect, enumerated in the conjugation among the tenses of the subjunctive, they belong rather to the conditional; although, as grammatical forms, they correspond to the same tenses of the indicative.

*Remark 7.* Whilst the indicative (the direct mood) is used to express your own opinion, or to relate events in a direct way; the subjunctive (the indirect mood) is used to show, that what you are stating, is the opinion of others; or that you are relating a fact not from your own knowledge, but from what others have told you.

You say, therefore,—

Es ist nur Ein Gott, there is but one God.

You say, likewise,—

Auch die Türken glauben, daß nur ein Gott ist.

The Turks also believe, there is but one God.

In the first of the foregoing sentences you state, in a direct way, your own opinion. In the second, you state the opinion of others; but, it is likewise your own, you believe yourself that there is but one God, and consequently you use the indicative.

On the other hand, a Negro might quite seriously state as his own belief that the devil is white, and if he spoke German, he would say,—

Der Teufel ist weiß.

But, you do not share in that opinion; and, therefore, you will, in stating it, use the subjunctive; e.g.,—



Die Neger meinen, der Teufel sey weiß.\*

It is the opinion of the Negroes, that the devil is white.

On the same principle you say,—

Ich weiß, daß er angekommen ist,

I know that he is arrived,

because the very use of the verb *wissen*, to know, implies certainty on your part; but, on the other hand, the subjunctive is to be employed, when, without giving an opinion of your own as to the truth of the fact, you repeat what others say,—

Man sagt, er sey angekommen.

People say, that he is arrived.

**Remark 8.** One of the most important uses of the subjunctive is in the indirect speech, of which a more familiar example cannot be referred to, than the public speeches as generally reported in the newspapers. Both languages correspond in changing the first person, in which the speaker addresses his hearers, into the third; but there is this difference, that, in English, the verb, throughout the indirect speech, is put in the imperfect, or pluperfect, or conditional tense; whilst, in German, the tense of the original address remains the same; only, as the subjunctive, properly speaking, has no imperfect, the perfect tense is to be used whenever a past tense is wanted. Thus, let us suppose a sentence in the original direct speech: “I am for peace, *ich bin für den Frieden*”; the reported indirect speech would be, in English, “he was for peace”; in German, “*er sey für den Frieden*”; in the direct speech, “Last year I was for peace, *voriges Jahr war ich für den Frieden*”; in the indirect, “Last year he had been for peace, *voriges Jahr sey er für den Frieden gewesen*”; in the direct speech, “I shall again be for peace, *ich werde wieder für den Frieden seyn*”; in the indirect, “He should again be for peace, *er werde wieder für den Frieden seyn*.”

**Remark 9.** The subjunctive is used to express an intention or wish, to have that act or condition brought about which is implied in the verb:—

Er ist fleißig, damit er etwas lerne.

He is industrious, in order that he might learn something.

Daß der Himmel es Dir vergebe!

May Heaven forgive you!

---

\* The rule concerning the omission of *daß*, will be given in a subsequent Chapter.

Sentences like the latter are more frequently rendered in the following form:—*Bergebe dir's der Himmel*, in which the verb may be considered as the third person of the imperative.

*Remark 10.* The Conditional Mood is used in laying down a condition which is known to be contrary to the actual state of things present or past, and then deducing from it a conclusion. In that part of the sentence which expresses the condition, it is better to employ the present or past conditional (imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive). In the part which expresses the conclusion, the present or past conditional is to be used when the conclusion refers distinctly to a definite present or past time; otherwise, the future conditional is employed instead.

a. Let us suppose a pauper saying:—"If I had a million, I should not be where I am now"; he lays down a condition, which is contrary to the actual state of things, considering that perhaps he does not possess a penny; the verb in the sentence, if I had a million, is therefore, in German to be put in the conditional mood, and as the conclusion refers distinctly to the present time (where I am now), the present conditional (imperf. subjunctive), is to be made use of. The verb in the phrase, "Where I am now," on the other hand, refers to the actual present state of things, and is, therefore, to be put in the present tense indicative. The whole sentence in German is, consequently, as follows:—

*Wenn ich eine Million hätte, so wäre ich nicht, wo ich bin.*

b. Suppose the same pauper boasting, "If I had a million, I should buy a country house." The conclusion, in this instance, does not distinctly point to the present time, but only to that indefinite period, which, in common parlance, is generally expressed by, "Some of these days;" the verb, "I should buy" is, therefore, to be put in the future conditional:—

*Wenn ich eine Million hätte, so würde ich ein Landhaus kaufen.*

c. If the condition refers to a fact or state of things, which may or may not happen, but which, if it happens, must necessarily lead to the consequence, expressed in the conclusion; the verb, both in the sentence, which contains the condition, and in that in which the conclusion is deduced, is to be put in the indicative mood, and in its natural tense.

*Wenn der Mond zwischen der Erde und der Sonne durchgeht, entsteht eine Sonnenfinsterniß.*

When the moon passes between the earth and the sun, an eclipse of the sun takes place.

*Remark 11.* The conditional is used as the optative, that is to say, to express a wish, especially in the form of an exclamation.

*Käme er doch!\** I wish he would come!

In sentences of this description the verb is always put in the inverted position (before its subject).

In other respects the conditional coincides, pretty nearly, in German with the same mood in the English conjugation.

When the principal sentence is in the conditional, the accessory sentence, if construed with a conjunction, is to be put in the same mood, *e.g.*,  
*Hätte ich doch nimmermehr gedacht, daß er so groß gewesen wäre.* I should have, forsooth, never thought that he had been so great.

Sometimes the optative is put in the form of an indirect question, with the personal pronoun interrogative, *e.g.*,

*Wer das wüßte!* French, *Ah! qui sait cela!* I should like to know that.

Another peculiarity is the use of the conditional instead of the indicative, in cases of doubt, or, to mark, as it were, surprise or joy at a fact, which has been 'so long expected, that we doubt its reality, even after it has really come to pass.

*Wär's möglich, könnt' ich nicht mehr wie ich wollte,*

*Müß ich die That vollbringen, weil ich sie gedacht.*

Is it possible, can I no more do as I like,

Must I accomplish the act, because I thought of it.

(From "Wallenstein's Death," by Schiller.)

*Hier wären wir am längst ersehnten Ziel.*

Here we are (I am happy to say) at the goal, which we have so long wished to reach.

**Remark 12.** The direct infinitive may be used to all intents and purposes as a noun, with or without an article; but it should not be thus used with an article, when there is any other part of speech intimately connected with, or governed by it.

*Schweigen ist besser als Reden.*

Silence (being silent) is better than speaking.

*Ich bin des Schreibens müde.*

I am tired of writing.

A sentence, such as, I am tired of writing for the newspapers, should not be translated by, *ich bin des für die Zeitungen Schreibens müde*; but, *ich bin es müde für die Zeitungen zu schreiben*. *Es* is in these instances indeclinable,

---

\* *Doch* is generally used to give greater force to a wish, as in the example given above, or to a request, like the French *donc*, *e.g.*, in the well known phrase, *dites-donc!* *Sagen Sie mir doch!* Just tell me.

and to be considered as a grammatical stopgap,\* just as in those sentences where it stands at the head, for the sake of inversion, *e.g.* in the sentence, quoted before. (*Es liebt die Welt, das Strahlende zu schwärzen.*)

*Remark 13.* The direct infinitive without an article, but with a noun governed by it, or with any other complement, may be used as a noun, but in the nominative case only; and in the accusative, after such verbs as govern a double accusative, as *nennen, lehren, etc., e.g., daß nenne ich einen Menschen quälen*, that is what I call tormenting a man.

*Remark 14.* The direct infinite as a simple noun, without any complement belonging to it, may be governed by a preposition like any ordinary substantive, *e.g., durch Gehorchen lernt man Herrschen*, by obeying we learn commanding (to command). When there is a complement with such an infinitive, the phrase is changed into an accessory sentence, construed with the conjunction *daß*, and the preposition is in these instances combined with *da* as a substitute for the demonstrative pronoun *daß* (see p. 14, Rem. 7). Let us suppose the sentence, "he won the regard of his officer by always willingly obeying his orders." Change the phrase "by obeying," into "that he obeyed," and combine "by," into "thereby;" the whole sentence will run thus:—

He won the regard of his officer thereby, that he always willingly obeyed his orders.

*Er gewann die Achtung seines Officiers dadurch, daß er seinen Befehlen immer willig gehorchte.*

*Remark 15.* The direct infinitive is governed, besides the auxiliary verb of the future tense, *werden*, (*ich werde haben, ich werde seyn*),

*a.* by the auxiliary verbs, mentioned before, (see p. 68).

dürfen,	wollen,
können,	sollen,
mögen,	müssen,
lassen.	

---

\* It is an impersonal objective case, as "it" in "it rains," is an impersonal nominative. The indirect infinitive after it is to be considered as a genitive. See Remark 16.

## b. by the verbs:—

heißen, to order, Ich hieß ihn gehen, I ordered him to go.  
 helfen, to help, Ich half ihm schreiben, I assisted him in writing.  
 lehren, to teach, Sie lehrte mich singen, she taught me singing.  
 lernen, to learn, Er lernte reiten, he learned to ride on horseback.

Machen is also sometimes construed in this way, *e.g.*, in Göthe's "Faust,"  
 der Casus macht mich lachen, this fact makes me laugh; you should, however,  
 be cautious in imitating this construction, as it is rather an unusual one.  
 We should say, in common parlance, das bringt mich zum Lachen.

c. Verbs, expressing motion, have sometimes with them the direct infinitive of another verb, as it were, adverbially:—

spazieren gehen,	spazieren reiten,	fischen gehen,
to take a walk, (to walk	to take a ride (to ride on	to go fishing.
promenading).	horseback promenading).	

Bleiben, to remain, is also used in this way, *e.g.*, stehen bleiben, (to stop, to remain standing), sitzen bleiben, to remain sitting, etc.

d. It is used after the verbs hören and sehen, in constructions, where, in the English sentence, the participle present is required after these verbs, *e.g.*,

I heard him calling out, ich hörte ihn ausrufen.  
 I saw him sawing wood, ich sah ihn Holz sägen.

*Remark 16.* Whilst the indirect infinitive may be treated in some instances as a nominative or accusative, the indirect infinitive is to be treated in the light of a genitive, *e.g.*, in the phrase, "the pleasure of seeing you," daß Vergnügen Sie zu sehen.

*Remark 17.* The indirect infinitive is used after all the verbs\* not enumerated in Remark 15, as governing a direct infinitive. A few examples will show, that, with the exceptions stated before, and to be stated presently, the rules coincide with those of the English grammar.

It is impossible to please every body, es ist unmöglich, es Jedermann recht zu machen.

---

\* The objective case, governed by the infinitive, must not be, at the same time, that of the verb of the principal sentence, as in the following English and Latin phrases, "I believe him to be a good man," "*censeo Carthaginem esse delendam*," these sentences would be in German, Ich glaube, daß er ein guter Mann ist. Meine Meinung ist daß Carthago zerstört werden sollte.

I am glad to see you again, es freut mich, dich wieder zu sehen.

I beg you to write to me, Ich bitte Sie, mir zu schreiben.

*Remark 18.* It has been stated before, that three prepositions only can be used with the indirect infinitive, *um, ohne, and anstatt*. Of these, *um*, "in order to" presents no difference from the English construction:—in order to see him, *um ihn zu sehen*; but we likewise say, "*ohne ihn zu sehen*," and "*anstatt ihn zu sehen*," in which phrases the English language makes use of the substantive infinitive, "without seeing him," and, "instead of seeing him."

*Remark 19.* The indirect infinitive of the active has a passive meaning after the verb *seyn*, *e.g.*, *dieses Buch ist zu lesen*, this book is to be read. It would be wrong in these instances to use the infinitive of the passive; *gelesen zu werden*.

The indirect infinitive corresponds, in this meaning, to the Latin *gerundivum*, (*hic liber est legendus*); and there is a participle formed from it which, however, is only used in the declined form; *dieses leicht zu lesende Buch gehört mir*; it would be wrong to say, *dieses Buch ist leicht zu lesend*, as, in this sentence, the phrase "*zu lesend*," would stand in the position of a predicate, which is never declined. It must consequently be, *dieses Buch ist leicht zu lesen*.

*Remark 20.* The use of the participle present is much more restricted in German than in English. Besides its being employed as an adjective, it may be used in speaking of an action or condition, taking place at the same time as the action and condition, expressed by the principal verb, *e.g.*,

*Diese Worte sprechend, hob er die Hand zum Himmel.*

Saying these words, he lifted up his hands to Heaven.

The use of the participle present is one of those points concerning which, theory can be learned by practice, but practice can scarcely be learned from theory. You may compose a sentence quite correctly in a grammatical point of view, which would never pass muster with regard to style and the natural character of the expression (*idiom*). You are, therefore, advised to be very cautious in the use of the participle present, in fact, of any intricate construction, until you have acquired some experience of the language, by reading good German authors. It is quite possible to write a very fair German style with the greatest simplicity of

construction and expression. Your safest mode of treating the participles, when translating from English into German, is, to analyse them and change the construction into an accessory sentence, as the case may be, either with a conjunction, or with a relative pronoun, *e.g.*:—

Speaking these words, he raised his hand to Heaven.

Während er diese Worte sprach, hob er seine Hand zum Himmel.

Having spoken these words, he raised, etc.

Nachdem er diese Worte gesprochen hatte, hob er, etc.

My uncle left his fortune to his youngest son, loving him best.

Mein Oheim vermachte sein ganzes Vermögen seinem jüngsten Sohn weil er ihn am meisten liebte.

I shot a bird flying over my garden.

Ich schoss einen Vogel während er (or welcher) über meinen Garten flog.

Let it also be understood that, in German, we never use constructions, such as, diese Worte gesprochen habend, or, während diese Worte sprechend; in both of these cases the phrase is to be changed, in the way which is shown in the foregoing examples.

Absolute constructions, in which the subject of the participle is different from that of the principal verb, *e.g.*:—

The enemy having passed the river, Cæsar struck his camp.

*Les ennemis ayant passé la rivière, César leva le camp.*

*Hostibus flumen transgressis, Cæsar castra movit.*

are inadmissible in German. They are to be changed in the same fashion as the examples given above:—

Als die Feinde über den Fluß gegangen waren, hob Cæsar das Lager auf.

### C.—PASSIVE VOICE.—USE OF THE REFLECTIVE FORM.—

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

*Remark 21.* The use of the passive voice in German, would scarcely present to the English student any difficulty, were it not for the difference between the two languages with regard to the auxiliary verb, used in the voice. The English language employs the auxiliary verb *to be*, the German the auxiliary verb *werden*, the original meaning of which is *to become*, so that the phrase, "Sir Thomas Picton *was* killed at Waterloo," would be in German, Sir Th. P. *became* killed (*wurde getödtet*). Now, it should be remembered, that, in German, the verb *seyn* expresses an accomplished fact; the verb *werden*, on the contrary, in the present tense, a passive fact, which is being accomplished; in the

relative past, (imperfect), a passive fact, which was being accomplished at the time referred to in a narrative. Whenever, therefore, you refer to the time at which the passive fact is, or was, being accomplished, you use in German the auxiliary verb *werden*; when you refer to a time, at which the passive fact is, or was to be considered as already accomplished, the verb *seyn* is used.

Let us take, as examples, some incidents, which happened at Waterloo.

During the battle, an officer might have reported to the Duke of Wellington, as a (passive) fact, which was just then going on:—

Das Forwerk Hougomont wird heftig angegriffen.

The farm-house of Hougomont is (being) vigorously attacked.

An account of the battle would now say,

Das Forwerk Hougomont wurde heftig angegriffen.

This narrative, having reference to the very time when the passive fact of Hougomont being attacked, was taking place, the verb *werden* (*not seyn*) is employed.

On the other hand, an officer might, as soon as Sir Thomas Picton had breathed his last, (as soon as his death had become an accomplished passive fact), have ridden up to the Duke and reported:—

Sir Thomas ist getödtet.

Had the Duke asked: "When?" the answer, pointing to the time when it happened, would have been:—

Er wurde so eben erschossen.

He was shot just now.

Treating the events of the evening *after* the battle, any narrative, from the Duke's own despatch down to the latest history of that campaign, has had to speak of the death of Sir Thomas as an accomplished fact. If, therefore, a historian of the present day, in describing the measures which the Duke took on that evening, used the expression, "the Duke would have gladly sent Sir Thomas in pursuit, but that brave general was killed,"—the German version of the latter part of this sentence would be, *dieser tapfere General war (not wurde) getödtet*. The Duke himself might have written in a letter of that evening: Sir Thomas is killed; the Earl of Uxbridge is severely wounded, etc., the German version of this sentence would be: *Sir Thomas ist (not wird) getödtet; der Graf von Uxbridge ist (not wird) schwer verwundet*. The phrases, *ist getödtet*, *ist verwundet*, are, in reality, to be considered as the perfect tense, and the phrase, *war getödtet*, as the pluperfect of the passive, instead of, *ist getödtet worden*; *ist verwundet worden*; *war getödtet worden*.

**Remark 22.** The direct infinitive of the passive is never used



after a transitive verb, as is done in English, *e.g.*, in the sentence, "The judge ordered the prisoner to be taken away." In such constructions, the direct infinitive of the active voice is used in German:—

**Der Richter befahl, den Gefangenen hinzurichten.**

The accusative *Gefangenen*, is not governed by the principal verb *befahl*, but by the infinitive, *hinzurichten*. The accusative, governed by *befahl*, is understood. You, therefore, analyse your sentence in this way; The judge ordered. Whom did he order? Some one (understood). To do what? To execute. To execute whom? the prisoner.

The judge ordered (some one) to execute the prisoner.

**Remark 23.** Verbs governing the dative case, cannot be used in the passive, except in the impersonal form; and then the noun or pronoun, which in English, as the subject of the verb, would be in the nominative, is put in German in the dative. We do *not* say in German, *ich wurde begegnet*, I was met; but, *es wurde mir begegnet*, or, omitting the impersonal pronoun, *mir wurde begegnet*, it was met to me; *not*, *Ich wurde geantwortet*, but, *es wurde mir*, or, *mir wurde geantwortet*, it was answered to me.

When the person is mentioned, who answered, the German construction had better be put in the active voice, *e.g.*, instead of, "I was answered by my friend," we should say, *My friend answered to me*, *mein Freund antwortete mir*. When the person is not mentioned you may use the indefinite pronoun *man*, as the subject of the verb. I was answered, *man antwortete mir*. This latter construction is very convenient, also with regard to verbs, governing an accusative case:—I was asked, *who* I was; *man fragte mich*, *wer ich* *sey*. *She was requested to sing*, *man bat sie zu singen*.

**Remark 24.** The reflexive form of the verb is very often used in German, where in English the passive voice would be employed. *Sein Schweigen erklärt sich leicht aus seiner Dummheit*. "His silence is easily explained from his stupidity;" *Das versteht sich*, that is understood, (is a matter of course). *Das fragt sich*, that may be questioned.

**Remark 25.** The use of the impersonal verbs, such as, *Es regnet*, *es schneit*, *es hagelt*, it rains, it snows, it hails, and similar impersonal verbs, is common to both languages; but, in German, there are some other verbs used impersonally, the construction

of which, widely differs from the English idiom. Instead of saying, as is done in English, "I am cold, I am glad, I am sorry, I am shuddering," we say, "it freezes me, it rejoices me, it does me grief, it shudders me;" *Es friert mich, es freut mich, es thut mir leid, es schaubert mir.* The same construction is used with many more verbs of the same kind, expressing personal sensation or feeling.

The impersonal use of the verb in the passive voice is not foreign to the English language, but it is more frequent in German.

Phrases such as, "it is said," "it is generally believed," are specimens of the English mode of using the verb in the passive impersonally. You might translate these phrases, *es wird gesagt, es wird allgemein geglaubt*; but it is better to say, *man sagt, man glaubt allgemein.* The verb in the passive is also used impersonally in German, where, in English, you would express your meaning by a construction like the following, "there was dancing, singing, playing." The German version of these phrases is, *es wurde getanzt, es wurde gesungen, es wurde gespielt*, and when the verb is in the inverted position, either in a question, or in compliance with the general rule, the impersonal pronoun *es* is omitted, *e.g., Wurde gestern getanzt? Gestern wurde sehr schön gesungen.* Was there any dancing yesterday? There was yesterday very fine singing.

The impersonal pronoun, *es* gibt, with following accusative of the noun in the singular or in the plural, has the same meaning as the English "there is," or "there are," but only when it refers to existence in a general way, *e.g.* :—

*Es gibt keine Palmen im nördlichen Europa.*

There are no palm trees in northern Europe.

not, however,

*Es gibt, but, Es ist kein Brod auf dem Tische.*

There is no bread on the table.

#### D.—THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

<i>können,</i>	<i>mögen,</i>	<i>wollen,</i>	<i>lassen,</i>
<i>dürfen,</i>	<i>sollen,</i>	<i>müssen.</i>	

*Remark 26.* Although these verbs are not used like *seyn, haben, and werden*, in forming the different tenses of the conjugation, they are to be described as auxiliary, as they express, not an act, or a condition by themselves, but merely the mode, in which other verbs are to be taken. They, therefore, always refer

to an infinitive of another verb; and when that infinitive is not expressed, it is always understood, *e.g.*, *er kann nicht hinaus*, he cannot go out, (the infinitive *gehen* being understood). *Ich mag ihn nicht*, I cannot bear him, (the infinitive *leiden* being understood).

*Remark 27.* All these verbs can be construed with a direct infinitive only. This is to be borne in mind, especially with regard to *sollen*, as an English phrase, such as, "I ought to do this," might mislead the student to use the indirect infinitive.

The general meaning of these verbs coincides with their counterparts in English, or deviates so slightly from theirs that the student may easily find his way concerning their proper use. *Mögen* has sometimes the meaning, "to like or dislike doing an act," *Ich mag nicht ausgehen*, I do not like to go out. *Wollen* and *sollen* are frequently used to express, the former, "to pretend to" the latter, "to be said to," *e.g.*, *er will Sie kennen*, he pretends to know you. *Er soll sehr reich seyn*, he is said to be very rich. *Wollen* should not be confounded with the English "he or you, or they will," in the future tense. It always has in German the emphatic meaning, "I have the will, the intention to do a thing."

*Remark 28.* The auxiliary verb *lassen*, has two distinct meanings, "to allow one to do a thing," or, "to make one do a thing," *Ich lasse ihn gehen*, I allow him to go. In the other sense, the infinitive may have, either an active, or a passive meaning.

*Der Feldherr ließ seine Reiterei vorrücken.*

The general ordered his cavalry to advance.

*Der König ließ ihn hinrichten.*

The king ordered him to be executed.

The analysis of the latter sentence in which the infinitive has a passive meaning, is the same as gives before in Remark 23.

*Remark 29.* The conjugation of the English verbs of this class, being defective, the perfect and pluperfect cannot be formed from them. When, therefore, any of these tenses is wanted in English, it is expressed by the infinitive past of the governed, not by the past tense of the auxiliary verb. In German the past tense is formed from the auxiliary verb, with this anomaly, that their own infinitive supplies the participle past. The verbs, *heißen*, *sehen*, *hören*, and also *helfen*, which likewise govern a

direct infinitive, follow the same rule, (see Rem. 15, *a, b, d*).

Thus we say:—

Ich hätte nicht mit ihm gehen können (*not gekonnt*).

I could not have gone with him.

Ich habe ihn tanzen sehen (*not gesehen*).

I have seen him dancing.

Ich habe ihn gehen heißen (*not geheissen*).

I have commanded him to go.

When this construction occurs in an accessory sentence, the conjugated verb is not, as according to the general rule it ought to be, placed after the infinitives, but before them, *e.g.*,

Ich erhielt einen Brief den ich nicht habe lesen können.

I got a letter which I was not able to read.

*Remark 30.* Before concluding the Chapter on the verbs; the rule concerning the use of the auxiliary verbs *haben* and *seyn*, in the past tenses of the active voice, is to be told. *Seyn* is used with all the verbs, expressing change or motion, and also with *bleiben*, to remain; *haben*, with all those which do not express change or motion. We say, therefore, *ich bin gegangen*, I have walked; *ich bin geritten*, I have taken a ride; *ich bin erkrankt*, I have fallen ill; *ich bin genesen*, I have recovered, etc.; as the first two of these verbs express movement; the latter two, change from one condition to another.

The same verb may, in different cases, have different meanings, *e.g.*, *ziehen*, as a transitive verb, "to draw," *er hat das Kind aus dem Wasser gezogen*, he has drawn (rescued) the child from the water; as an intransitive verb, to go, to march, *das Heer ist in das Feld gezogen*, the army has marched into the field (taken the field). In such instances also, the rule holds good, which is given above.

The verbs, *stehen*, *sitzen*, *liegen* take *haben*, in their simple form;\* but *seyn*, when compound with a preposition or adverb.

Der Gedanke hatte lang vor seiner Seele gestanden.

The thought had long stood before (been present to) his mind.

---

\* Luther uses *stehen*, as a simple verb, with the auxiliary *seyn*. The same mode of speaking is still in general use in the southern-most provinces of Germany and in Switzerland, with regard to *stehen*, and *sitzen*, as may be seen from Goethe's pretty Swiss song:—

Uf'm Bergli bin i gessessen, etc., (*Auf dem Berglein bin ich gegessen*).

In d Garte bin i gestande, etc., (*In einem Garten bin ich gestanden*).

*Liegen* also is construed in the popular language with *seyn*.

Die Uhr ist still gestanden.

The clock (or watch) has stopped.

Er hat im Gefängniß gefessen.

He has sat (been confined) in prison.

Er ist niedergefessen (better, Er hat sich niedergelegt).

He has sat down.

Er hat den ganzen Morgen im Bett gelegen.

He has been lying in bed the whole morning.

Er ist niedergelegen, (better, Er hat sich niedergelegt).

He has laid himself down.

## CHAPTER V.

### CONCESSIVE ACCESSORY, COMPARATIVE, AND ELLIPTIC SENTENCES.

*Remark 1.* Accessory sentences are called concessive, when expressing a certain state of things, notwithstanding, or in spite of which, the fact, enounced in the principal sentence, exists or has come to pass. Concessive accessory sentences are constituted,

- a. by the conjunctions *ob* and *wenn*, with the adverbs *gleich*, *schon*, or *auch*, which may be compounded into one word with them, or stand separate from them in the body of the sentence.

Obgleich wir uns	}	nie gesehen haben, (so) * sind wir (dennoch) Freunde.
Ob wir uns gleich		
Wenn gleich wir uns		
Wenn wir uns gleich		

To give greater force to the assertion, contained in the principal sentence, we should say, *sind wir doch* (or, *dennoch*) *Freunde*. *Doch* or *dennoch* should always be put in the principal sentence, when *auch* is used in the accessory concessive one. *Wenn man ihn auch nicht lieben kann, muß man dennoch ihn achten*, although we can not love him, we must (nevertheless) respect him.

\* It is customary, to begin the principal sentence with *so*, when it stands after an accessory sentence, constituted by *wenn*, *da*, *wie*, or by *obgleich*, and the other concessive conjunctions. This *so* is to be considered as a demonstrative corresponding to a relative adverb, just as *where—there*, *when—then*. Its use is now becoming less frequent, than it was in the style of the last century.

- b. By the relative adverb *wie*, or by *so* before an adjective or adverb with *auch* following.

*Wie tapfer sie sich vertheidigten, so unterlagen sie dennoch.*

However bravely they defended themselves, yet they succumbed.

However brave a man he was, would be in German, *ein wie tapferer Mann er auch war*; as the article *ein* should never be put after a relative, except *was für*, and *welcher*, in the form *welch ein*, corresponding to *so* *ein*.

- c. By the conjugation *wenn*—*auch* with the particles *nach* *so* preceding the adjective or adverb.

*Wenn der Mann auch nach so großmütig ist, so wird er dennoch vielen Un dank ärndten.*

However generous a man may be, he will earn (meet with) much ingratitude.

- d. By the relative pronoun *welcher*, by *wer*, *was*, and *was für* with the particle *auch*, or *auch immer*, following.

*Welchen Grund (or was für einen) du auch (immer) hast, dich zu beklagen, etc.*

Whatever reason you may have for complaint, etc.

*Wen du auch immer fragen magst, etc.*

*Was du auch immer (or nur immer) sagen magst, etc.*

*Wer nur irgend, Wo nur irgend, Wie nur irgend*, and similar phrases do not constitute concessive sentences, they only point out that *wer*, *wie*, *wo*, etc., are to be taken in their widest acceptation, as if it were, *whosoever*, *wheresoever* in the whole world; in whatsoever manner possible.

*Remark 2.* When two comparatives are placed in contraposition, so that one of them is to be taken as the cause, and the other as the effect, the sentence expressing the cause is to be construed as an accessory one constituted by the conjunction *je*; the other expressing the effect, as a principal sentence, which, if placed after the accessory, is to be headed by *desto* and the comparative, with the verb in the inverted position.

*Je angelegentlicher er mir schmeichelt, desto verdächtiger ist er mir; or, er ist mir desto verdächtiger, je mehr er mir schmeichelt.*

The more assiduously he flatters me, the more suspicious he appears to me.

Neither the conjunction *je*, nor the particle *desto*, can be separated from the comparative; when, therefore, the adjective governs a case, the

case must follow the adjective instead of preceding it, as is otherwise to be done, according to the general rule. You would say, *diese Erfindung ist dem Menschen nützlich*, but, *je nützlicher diese Erfindung dem Menschen ist, desto ruhmvoller ist sie dem Erfinder*. *Desto* must always head the sentence, expressing the effect, when it is placed after the one containing the cause. In this position the comparative comes to stand before the case, governed by the adjective, as, e.g., in the last sentence, *desto ruhmvoller ist sie dem Erfinder*. If the sentence, containing the effect, is placed before the one containing the cause, *desto*, with the comparative, is to stand after the case governed by the adjective.

When the sentence expressing the cause does not contain a comparative degree, but only states a fact, the comparative of the principal sentence is preceded by *um so*, and the accessory sentence constituted by the conjunction *als*; e.g., *Ich achte ihn um so aufrichtiger, als er nie mit seinen Verdiensten prahlt*. I respect him the more sincerely as he never boasts of his merits.

*Remark 3.* The conjunctions *wenn* or *ob*, are very often omitted, in conditional as well as in concessive sentences, and the *ve. b* is then inverted just as is done in the same construction in English.

*Hätte ich das gewußt, so würde ich anders gehandelt haben.*

Had I known that, I should have acted differently.

In all these constructions, the subsequent sentence must begin with *so*, which thus separates the two inverted sentences.

*Remark 4.* The conjunction *daß* is frequently omitted (especially in the indirect speech), and the accessory sentence, constituted by it, is then put in the same order as if it were a principal one, just as is done in English.

*Er sagte mir er werde nach London gehen.*

On the other hand, the omission is not correct, at least not in prose, when the verb of the principal sentence is in the negative. You should not say, *Ich glaube nicht, ein Schurke kann mir schaden*, (I do not believe that a scoundrel will be able to do me any injury); but you *must* say,—

*Ich glaube nicht, daß ein Schurke mir schaden kann.*

## APPENDIX I.

---

### A CHAPTER ON DERIVATION.

*Remark 1.* Words from which others are derived, but which are not themselves derived from another word, are called roots.

Examples may be given from both languages:—*giver, gift*, are derived from the verb *to give*; *drift, driver, drove, drover*, from *to drive*; *drawer, draught, draughty, draughtiness*, from *to draw*. The verbs, *to drive, to give, to draw*, are not derived from other words; they are, therefore, roots; all the other words are derivatives. In the same way, *Geber, Gift, Gabe*, are derived from *geben*; *Treiber, Trieb, Trift*, from *treiben*; *Zug, Zucht, züchtig, Züchtigkeit*, from *ziehen*. *Geben, treiben, ziehen*, are roots; all the rest are derivatives.

*Remark 2.* All original roots in German, are verbs.

*Remark 3.* In German, all the verbs of the ancient form, and also the irregular verbs *können, sollen*, etc., *bringen, denken*, etc. (see pp. 68, 69), are roots; but it is to be observed, that many verbs which are now conjugated in the modern form, were originally conjugated in the ancient; and, therefore, are likewise to be considered as roots.

All the roots are monosyllabic. The syllable *-en* (*geb-en, find-en, fließ-en*) of the infinitive does not belong to the root, but is an extraneous addition; as are also the enclitical prefixes.

*Remark 4.* Words directly sprung from the root, are termed primary or radical derivations.

Words derived, not from the root, but from a word which is itself a derivative, are termed secondary or flectional derivations.



*Drove* is derived from the root *to drive*; *drover* from *drove*; the former is, therefore, a primary (radical); the latter, a secondary (fleclional) derivation. *Draught*, which is directly derived from the root *to draw*, is a radical; *draughty*, and *draughtiness*, which are derived from *draught*, are secondary (fleclional) derivations. In the same manner, *Zug* and *Zucht*, which spring from the root (*ziehen*) itself, are primary; *züchtig* and *Züchtigkeit*, as being derived from *Zucht*, secondary derivations.

*Remark 5.* The primary derivations are formed, in German, from the root, either with or without modification of the radical vowel; *e. g.*, *Schlaf*, sleep, from *schlafen*, to sleep; *Spruch*, (a saying), sentence, from *sprechen*, to speak; *gleich*, like, from the verb *gleichē* (*gleich-en*), to be like; *glatt*, smooth, from *gleiten* (imperf. *glitt*), to glide. All the primary derivations are either substantives or adjectives.

Many of the substantives and adjectives of primary derivation have sprung from roots (verbs), which are no longer in use in the modern German language; *e. g.*, *groß*, great, is derived from the Gothic verb *growan*, which is now lost in German, although preserved in English in "to grow."

*Remark 6.* Secondary derivations are formed from the primary, or even from other secondary derivations, by adding terminations (fleclions), which impart to them a definite character as verbs, substantives, adjectives, or adverbs. *Schlaf* is directly derived from the root *schlaf-en*. *Schläfer* is formed by the addition *-er*, which imparts to the word the definite character of a substantive, expressing, a man who sleeps, a sleeper (as it does with regard to other words; *e. g.*, *Schlächter*, a slaughterer, a butcher; *Müller*, a miller; *Maler*, a painter; from *schlachten*, to slaughter, derivative of *schlagen*, to slay; from *mahlen*, to grind corn; from *malen*, to paint); *schläferig* is formed by adding to *Schläfer* the adjectival termination *-ig*; *Schläfrigkeit*, by adding to *schläferig* the substantival termination *-heit*, both of which terminations impart to the word thus formed a certain definite character, common to all the adjectives or substantives which may be formed in the same way.

The secondary derivations may be verbs (*e. g.*, *ein[sch]lafen*, to lull to sleep), substantives, adjectives, and also adverbs.

*Remark 7.* The following table of examples will show the progress from the root to the extreme of the secondary derivation:—

ROOT.	PRIMARY (RADICAL) DERIVATION.	SECONDARY (FLECTIONAL) DERIVATION.
ziehen, to draw; also, to educate; and, moreover, to march	der Zug, the draught, or march die Zucht, the discipline das Gezücht, the generation (in a bad sense; e. g., Ottern-gezücht, generation of vipers) zäh, tough	zugig, draughty vor-züglich, excellent Vor-züglichkeit, excellence; Zügel, bridle zügeln, to restrain Zügelung, restraint; züchtig, modest Züchtigkeit, modesty; züchtigen, to chastise Züchtigung, chastisement Züchtling, a convict; zögern, to delay, (to drag on) Zögerung, delay; Zähigkeit, toughness.
sprechen, to speak	der Spruch, the sentence die Sprache, the language das Gespräch, the conversation	Sprecher, speaker groß-sprecherisch, magniloquent gesprächig, loquacious Gesprächigkeit, loquaciousness sprüchlich, sententious sprachlich, relating to language.
schießen, to shoot	der Schuß, shot der Schutz, protection die Schiefe, baker's peel das Geschöß, weapon for shooting (from bow and arrow to a revolver) das Geschütz, cannon	der Schütze, the marksman; beschützen, to protect der Beschützer, protector die Beschützerin, protectress die Beschützung, protection; ab-schüssig, steep die Ab-schüssigkeit, steepness.

*Remark 8.* Among the substantives of primary derivation,

a. the monosyllables formed from the root, with or without modification or change of vowel, are of the masculine gender:—

der Zug, der Spruch, der Schuß, der Schlaf, der Fall.

b. those formed from the root, with or without modification or change of vowel, but with the addition of the ending -e or -t (contracted from -et), are of the feminine gender:—

die Sprache; die Lese, the vintage (from lesen, to read, to pick); die Schiefe; die Zucht (Zuch-et); die Bucht, bay (Buch-et, from biegen, to bend); die List, cunning (List-et, likewise from lesen, to read, to pick).

c. those formed from the root, with or without modification or change of vowel, with the addition of the prefix *ge-*, and, sometimes, the ending *-t* or *-t*, are of the neuter gender:—

das *Gespinnst*, das *Geschoß*, das *Geschütz*, das *Gegstück*.

Some masculines and feminines of primary derivation have likewise the prefix *ge-*; e.g., *der Geruch*, smell; *der Geschmack*, taste; *der Gesang*, song (instead of *Ruch*, from *riechen*; *Schmack*, from *schmecken*; *Sang*, from *singen*); *die Gefahr*, danger; *die Gewalt*, power (instead of *Fahre*, from *fahren* [root of "fear"]; *Walte*, from *walten* [to wield]). *Schloß*, *Maß* (from *schließen*, *maßen*), are neuter. *Band*, meaning a volume, or the binding (*Einband*) of a book, is of masculine; but when meaning a ribbon, a tie, of neuter gender. When the verb has the enclitical prefix *ge-*, the primary derivation formed from it follows the gender which it would have without it; e.g., *genießen*, to enjoy. *der Genuß*, the enjoyment; *gewinnen*, to win, *der Gewinn*, the gain.

*Remark 9.* Verbs are derived from primary or secondary derivations by merely adding the flexion of the conjugation to the adjectives or substantives, mostly with modification of the vowel. All derived verbs belong to the modern conjugation:—

*stark*, strong, *stärken*, to strengthen; *schwach*, weak, *schwächen*, to weaken; *würdig*, worthy, *würdigen*, to hold worthy.

*Schutz*, protection; *schützen*, to protect. *Flucht*, flight; (*sich*) *flüchten*, to take to flight.

*Remark 10.* Many neuter verbs of the ancient conjugation are transformed by change of vowel into transitive verbs, which, like all derived verbs, belong to the modern conjugation; and the meaning of which is, to make a person or a thing perform the act which is expressed by the neuter verb; e.g.,

*sinken*, to sink, *senken*, to make sink, (to sink a vessel); *liegen*, to lie, *legen*, to make lie, to lay; *sitzen*, to sit, *setzen*, to make sit, to set; *trinken*, to drink, *tränken*, to make drink, to water a horse, a camel, etc.

*Remark 11.* Derived intransitive verbs do not change, nor modify the radical vowel of the word from which they are formed; the corresponding transitive derived verbs, on the other hand, change the vowel; e.g.,

*erwärmen*, to get warm, *erwärmen*, to make warm; *erstarben*, to grow strong, *stärken*, to strengthen;  *dampfen*, to smoke (as a heap of cinders may do), *dämpfen*, to steam (in cookery).

*Remark 12.* Some verbs have a sort of diminutive form, consisting in the change of the termination *-en* into *-eln*, with modification of the radical vowel; e.g., *lachen*, to laugh, *lächeln*, to smile; *spotten*, to mock, *spötteln*, to ridicule; *tanzen*, to dance, *tänzeln*, to trip about, etc.

*Remark 13.* Substantives of the secondary derivation are formed,—

a. From monosyllabic adjectives, by modifying the vowels a, o, u, and adding the termination -*e*; *e. g.*,

warm, warm	die Wärme, warmth.
kalt, cold	die Kälte, frost.
weiß, white	die Weiße, whiteness.
tief, deep	die Tiefe, depth.
hoch, high	die Höhe,* height.
kurz, short	die Kürze, shortness.

Substantives thus derived, express, in their original meaning, physical properties, which may be ascertained by the five senses. The difference between nouns like *Höhe*, height, and *Höheit*, elevation of character; between *Leere*, which means physical, and *Leereheit*, which means moral or intellectual emptiness, will best show the meaning of the rule. Some of these substantives may be used figuratively, to express moral or intellectual qualities; *e. g.*, *die Kälte seines Betragens*, the coldness of his conduct; *die Tiefe seiner Ideen*, the depth of his ideas; but this does not affect the rule. *Treue*, fidelity, from *treu*, is almost the only instance of a substantive, expressing a moral quality, being derived in this way.

b. From monosyllabic adjectives, by adding the termination -*heit*; from adjectives of more than one syllable, by adding the termination -*feit*. -*heit* is used also with adjectives ending in -*en*; with *dunkel*, dark:—*Dunkelheit*,† darkness, and with *sicher*, secure:—*Sicherheit*, security.

wahr, true	Wahrheit, truth.
schön, beautiful	Schönheit, beauty.
ergeben, devoted	Ergebenheit, devotedness.
eitel, vain	Eitelkeit, vanity.
freundlich, friendly	Freundlichkeit, friendliness.

Substantives thus derived express moral or intellectual properties, or such as can only be ascertained by the intellectual or moral faculties of man.

c. From other substantives, by adding the termination -*schaft*. The English equivalent of the termination -*schaft* is -*ship*. Derivations formed with the help of this syllable, express, in both languages, a relationship of that nature which the notion of the original substantive indicates; *e. g.*, *Freund*, friend, *Freundschaft*, friendship; *Verwandter*, relation, *Verwandschaft*, relationship (parentage).

\* See p. 26, the foot note.

† The syllable -*ig* is sometimes put in before -*feit* for the sake of euphony; *e. g.*, *müde*, tired, *Müdigkeit*, lassitude; *süß*, sweet, *Süßigkeit*, sweetness; *feucht*, damp, *Feuchtigkeit*, dampness.

d. From verbs, by adding to their radical portion the termination -ung, the equivalent of which is the English -ing. Substantives thus derived, express the act implied in the verb from which they are formed:—

stärken, to strengthen	Stärkung, the strengthening.
verläumben, to slander	Verläumbung, the slander.
empfehlen, to recommend	Empfehlung, the recommendation.

Also the result of the act:—

erfinden, to invent	Erfindung, the invention.
erfahren, to experience	Erfahrung, the experience.
bemerken, to observe	Bemerkung, the observation.

e. From verbs and substantives, by addition of the ending -ei (corresponding to the Mediæval Latin and Italian *ia* — *e. g.*, in *osteria*—; the present French *ie* in *brasserie*, *lingerie*, and similar words).

Like the English words, *brewery*, *vintry*, *Jewry*, the German substantives in -ei mean either a trade, or the place where the trade is carried on; or the corporation which carries on the trade; or a community and its habitation. When it does not mean a trade, but a mode of action, it has always the sense of something perverse or contemptible; *e. g.*, *Heuchelei*, hypocrisy, from *heucheln*, to sham, as it were, the trade of shamming and lying.

Bäcker, a baker	Bäckerei, either the trade of baking, or a baker's shop.
brauen, to brew	Brauerei, brewery (either the trade of brewing, or the place where it is done).
schmeicheln, to flatter	Schmeichelei, flattery.

Remark, that all the substantives derived from adjectives, and ending in -e (*Kälte*, *Wärme*, etc.); and all the substantives ending in -heit or -keit, in -schaft, -ung, -ei,

are of the feminine gender.

f. Substantives with the derivative ending -er, have the same import as the corresponding class of nouns in the English language; *e. g.*,—

färben, to dye,	der Färber, the dyer.
malen, to paint,	der Maler, the painter.
spielen, to gamble,	der Spieler, the gambler.
jagen, to hunt,	der Jäger, the hunter.

All these substantives are of masculine gender.

g. Substantives of the masculine gender, meaning persons, are changed into feminines by the addition of the syllable -in; *e. g.*,—

der Freund, the friend,	die Freundin, the (lady) friend.
der Feind, the enemy,	die Feindin, the (lady) enemy.
der König, the king,	die Königin, the queen.
der Graf, the earl,	die Gräfin, the countess.

The sex is marked in this way also with some of the quadrupeds;

<i>e. g.</i> , — der Löwe, the lion,	die Löwin, the lioness.
der Bär, the bear,	die Bäarin, the she-bear.
der Affe, the monkey (ape),	die Affin, the she-monkey.

*h.* The endings *-chen* or *-lein* serve to form diminutives; *e. g.*, —

der Baum, the tree,	das Bäumchen, the little tree.
der Fluß, the river,	das Flüßchen, the little river.
die Blume, the flower,	das Blümchen, the little flower.
das Schiff, the ship,	das Schiffchen, the little ship.

The use of the ending *-lein* is becoming more and more obsolete, except in devotional style, where the language of the Bible is adopted, and in the popular dialects of the South, in which the other form *-chen* (discernible also in English words like *manni-kin*, *panni-kin*) does not occur. The diminutive in German is very extensively made use of in the language of fondness and petting, so that children and young ladies very rarely get their name without the coaxing addition of *-chen*, or other grammatical and ungrammatical diminutives. In Munich and Vienna the *-lein* is corrupted in *-erl* or *-y*. Anna becomes *Nann*y and *Nannerl*, Katharine, *Kath*y and *Katherl*.\* You may sometimes find these corruptions in comedies and also in poetry.

All these diminutives are of the neuter gender.

*i.* Substantives with the termination *-niß* are formed from other substantives, from verbs, and in a few instances from adjectives. *Bund*, alliance, *das Bündniß*, covenant; *erleben*, to live to see, *das Erlebnis*, experience; *ersparen*, to save, *die Ersparniß*, saving; *wild*, wild, *die Wildniß*, wilderness.

---

\* The Old-Bavarian dialect, besides being uttered without opening the teeth, bears a striking resemblance to "Cockney" also by its abrupt intonation. The "all right" of the London "bus"-driver would have quite a "household" sound at Munich. It is, therefore, rather amusing to see that those blunders of misplaced aspiration, for which the Lord Mayor's lieges are so famous, should likewise occur on the banks of the Isar. A very striking example of daily occurrence is the version of the name of *Eva Catharine*, which in the Munich pronunciation is *Heffa Kath*y. A worse corruption, prevalent near the Rhine, is that of *Anna Ottilia* into *Anudel* (pronounce *Anoodle*). This, although a diminutive form meant to be fond, can scarcely be said to have an endearing sound to British ears.

These substantives, some of which are of the neuter, others of the feminine gender, have the meaning of a special result, or a special state of things.

j. Substantives with the derivative ending -ling denote persons. They are formed either from other substantives or also from adjectives.

Strafe, punishment,	Sträfling, a man under punishment, a convict.
Gunst, favour,	Günstling, a man enjoying favour, a favourite.
fremd, stranger,	Frembling, a stranger.
jung, young,	Jüngling, a youth.

They are all of them of the masculine gender, and convey the meaning of a man who is in the condition expressed by the substantive or adjective, to which the derivative termination is added.

In some instances the termination -ling imparts to the substantive the character of contemptibility; *e. g.*, *der Wisling*, the would-be-wit; *der Dichtling*, the poetaster.

k. Substantives are formed by the termination -fal or -fel from other substantives, and also from some verbs.

schicken, to send,	das Schicksal, what is sent (decreed) by providence; destiny, fate.
scheuen, to abhor,	das Scheusal, what is to be abhorred; monster.
rathen, to guess,	das Räthsfel, what is to be guessed; riddle.

All these substantives are of the neuter gender, except *die Trübsal*, the tribulation.

l. The termination -thum is corresponded to by the English -dom. *Papstthum*, Popedom; *Herzogthum*, Dukedom; *Grafenthum* (*Grafschaft*), Earldom. Likewise, *Christenthum*, Christianity; *Judenthum*, Judaism; *Göbenthum*, Paganism.

These examples show sufficiently the meaning of the substantives ending in -thum. They denote either a system, or an institution in its most general bearing, or also, like *Herzogthum*, the territory belonging to an individual whose rank is indicated by the original substantive. They are all of them of neuter gender, except *der Reichthum*, the wealth; *der Irrthum*, the error.

14. Adjectives of the second derivation are formed from verbs, from substantives, from other adjectives, and also from adverbs by adding the terminations,—

-ig, -igſch, -bar, -ſam, -en (-ern), -lich, -haft, -lſt.

a. Adjectives in -ig, the English -y, are formed from substantives, expressing a property, or a quality,—

Bleiſſig, industry,	ſleiſſig, industrious.
Mächt, might,	mächtig, mighty.

or a substance,—

Feuer, fire,	feurig, fiery.
Stein, stone,	ſteinig, stony.

In this latter bearing the adjectives convey the meaning of only partial qualification. Ein ſteiniger Weg, would be, a road on which there are stones, but not a *road of stone*, the latter meaning being expressed by ein ſteinerner Weg. Thus also, dieſer Gips iſt erdig, this gypsum is earthy (mixed with earth); but, ein irdeneſ Gefäß, an *earthen vessel*, (a vessel wholly, not merely partially consisting of earth.)

They are, moreover, formed from adverbs of time and locality, affording a very convenient set of words, the want of which is very often felt in English; e. g.,—

hier, here; hieſig.	dort, there; dortig (daſſig from da).
jezt, now; jeztig.	damals, then; damalig.
heute, to-day; heutig.	morgen, to-morrow; morgig.
geſtern, yesterday; geſterig.	heuer, this year; heurig.
dieſſeits, on this side; dieſſeitig.	jenſeits, on that side; jenſeitig.

and also, einmalig, vielmalig, vormalig, abermalig, nachmalig, beiderſeitig, einſeitig, gegenſeitig, etc., etc.

b. Adjectives with the ending -igſch are formed from the names of countries, provinces, towns and nations or tribes: preußiſch, Prussian; ſächſiſch, Saxon; wieneriſch, (from Wiener, the Viennese), Viennese; frankfurtiſch, of Frankfurt.

Adjectives ending in -igſch, but not referring to proper names, generally have the meaning of something perverse or vicious: ſlaviſch, slavish; weibſch, effeminate; neidiſch, envious; zügliſch, quarrelsome.

c. Adjectives with the ending -bar or -ſam are derived from substantives of the first derivation or from verbs.

They have either a passive meaning—

ſichtbar (from ſehen), capable of being seen, visible; hörbar, capable of being heard, audible; tragbar, capable of being carried, portable;



or an active one—

danfbar, inclined to thank, grateful; freitbar, prepared to fight, warlike; fruchtbar, apt to bear fruit, fruitful.

The same difference occurs with the adjectives in *-sam*: *lenkfam*, ready to be guided, docile; *biegfam*, apt to be bent. On the other hand, *gehörfam*, ready to obey, (*gehörfam*), obedient; *fparfam*, in the habit of saving, frugal. (*-sam* is the English *-some* in words like quarrelsome, troublesome, etc., etc.).

d. Adjectives with the ending *-en* are formed from nouns expressing substances; e.g., *Gold*, gold, *golden*; *Wolle*, wool, *wollen*, woollen; likewise *filbern*, *fupfern*, from *Silber*, silver, *Rupfer*, copper. When the radical portion of the substantive ends in a vowel, or in *l*, *n*, or *s*, the *n* of the termination is to be preceded by an *r*: e.g., *Blei*, lead, *bleiern*, leaden; *Stahl*, steel, *ftählern*, of steel; *Wachs*, wax, *wächfern*; *Thon*, clay, *thödnern*.

e. The ending *-lich* finds its equivalent in the English *-ly* or *-y*: *Vater*, *väterlich*, father, fatherly; *König*, *königlich*, king, kingly; *Tag*, *täglich*, day, daily; *Glück*, *glücklich*, luck, lucky. Adjectives ending in *-lich* derived from verbs, express either an active or a passive quality; e.g., *fterben*, to die, *fterblich*, liable to die, mortal; *nützen*, to be useful, *nützlich*, useful; *beharren*, to persevere, *beharrlich*, persevering. On the other hand, *glaublich*, what may be believed, credible; *vermeiblich*, what may be avoided, avoidable.

f. Adjectives ending in *-haft* are formed from substantives and also from some verbs. They express the habit of practising that which is implied in the substantive or verb from which they are formed, or of acting like a person or animal such as the one alluded to in their radical portion:—*Tugend*, virtue, *tugendhaft*, virtuous; *Lafter* vice, *lafterhaft*, vicious; *Lüge*, lie, *lügenhaft*, in the habit of telling lies, mendacious; *Meifter*, a master, *meifterhaft*, in a masterly style; *Efel*, a donkey, *efelhaft*, in donkey's fashion, very stupid.

g. Adjectives ending in *-icht* express similarity or partial affinity to the substance implied in the substantive from which they are formed; e.g., *wollicht*, like wool; *falzigicht*, tainted (not saturated) with salt. You would call a woollen plaid, *ein wollenes Tuch*, but, the crop of a negro, *wollichtes Haar*.

*Remark 15.* The enclitical syllables\* modify the meaning of the verbs to which they are prefixed, in the following way:—

a. *be-* like its English equivalent in verbs such as, to bedizen, to bedaub, to belabour, expresses that the action implied in the verb is performed with reference to the person or thing which is the object of the verb.

lachen, to laugh,	belachen, to laugh at.
rauben, to commit a robbery,	berauben, to rob a person.
schießen, to shoot,	beschießen, to cannonade (a city, a fortress, etc.).

Many verbs have been formed from substantives expressly for this composition; e. g., beschränken, to limit, from Schranke, limit; bewaffnen, to arm, from Waffe, weapon; beschuhen, to provide with shoes, from Schuh, shoe.

The substantive very often takes, in these compositions, the addition -ig; e. g., Gnade, grace, begnadigen, to grant a pardon; Schulb, guilt, beschuldigen, to accuse; Gunst, favour, begünstigen, to favour.

b. Verbs with the prefix *er-* express:—

1. Attaining to a condition, or effecting a certain result; e. g.,  
erwärmen, to grow warm; erwachen, to awake; ertönen, to resound.—ermärmen (see Rem. 10) to warm: erwecken, to awaken; erschüttern, to shake.

2. Acquisition or appropriation:—

erobern, to conquer; erlangen, to obtain; erkennen, to recognize; erblicken, to perceive.

c. Verbs with the prefix *ver-* express:—

1. a mistake:—

sich verschreiben, to blunder in writing; sich verrechnen, to miscalculate; sich verreben, to commit a lapse of the tongue; verführen, to mislead, to seduce; verkennen, to be mistaken in —.

2. a loss:—

verlieren, to lose; verspielen, to lose in gambling; vertrinken, to spend in drinking; verschlafen, to get rid of (one's anger) by sleeping.

3. consuming, annihilating, or vanishing:—

verzehren, to consume; verbrennen, to burn (to consume by burning); vergiften, to poison (to annihilate by poison); verschwinden, to vanish; verblühen, to fade; verflingen, to die away (of sound).

---

\* *ge-* does not modify the meaning at all, it is mostly added by way of euphony, *empf-* is instead of *entbe-* or *anbe-*.

d. The prefix *ent-* expresses:—

1. Separation:—

*entgehen*, to go off from—, to escape; *entziehen*, to withdraw from—; *entreißen*, to tear away from—, to take away by force.

2. Deprivation:—

*enthaupten*, to deprive one of his head, to behead him; *entkleiden*, to deprive one of his dress, to undress him; *entmutigen*, to deprive one of his courage, to discourage him.

e. The prefix *zer-* expresses:—

1. With intransitive verbs, falling into pieces, or dissolving:—

*zerfallen*, to fall into pieces; *zerfließen*, to flow off in all directions; *zerfliegen*, to fly away like dust.

2. With transitive verbs, demolition or dissolution:—

*zerstören*, to smash into pieces; *zerbrechen*, to break into pieces; *zerreißen*, to tear into pieces.

## APPENDIX II.

---

### ON PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

ONE of the most important requisites for a good pronunciation is to acquire the true sound of the vowels and diphthongs; a point particularly to be minded by the English, who have often considerable difficulty in pronouncing some of them correctly. It is important to observe the distinction between the full and what has been termed the modified sound of the vowels. The latter is very different from the former, and serves, in certain cases, as we have seen, to distinguish numbers, moods, gradation of adjectives, etc.; e.g., *der Vater*, plur. *die Väter*; *ich mußte*, subj. *ich müßte*; *groß*, compar. *größer*.

The pure form of *a* in long syllables has always the full sound of the Italian *a*; it is not pronounced so full in *and*, *ant*, *ang*, where it approaches somewhat to the English *ung*, *unt*, in *hung*, *hant*; but it is never like *a* in the English words *all*, *fall*, etc. This last mode of pronouncing *a* is peculiar to the Saxon and Austrian dialects.

In pronouncing *e*, the English are to avoid the sound of their own *e* in *be*. This vowel is always in German like *e* in *hell*, *well*; and the German *ee*, (e.g., in *See*, *Kaffee*), is only the prolonged sound of the simple vowel. On the other hand, you should pronounce it differently from *ä*. *Fälle*, the cases, differently from *Felle*, the skins; *die Bären*, the bears, not like *die Beeren*, the berries; only in the syllables *end*, *eng*, *enn*, (as in *wenden*, *fengen*, *fennen*), it has a very slight touch of *ä*; and it is especially in these, that the sound of *i* ought to be avoided, so as not to pronounce *wenden* like *winden*, or *fengen* like *fingen*.

i is never pronounced like the English long i in *wine*, but always like i in *milk*, or ee in *steel*; e.g., *finger*, *trinken*, etc., in the same way as it sounds in *to sing*, *to drink*.

o is like the o in *frock*; the double oo, (e.g., in *Moore*), is only the prolonged sound of the single vowel. Distinguish o from u in words, like *Mond*, *the moon*, from *Mund*, *the mouth*, etc.

u has always the sound of oo in *good*, *cook*, etc. Englishmen should take care not to pronounce this vowel u like a diphthong, as is done in *use*.

The modified form of the three vowels, a, o, u, viz., ä, ö, ü, was originally æ, œ, ue, or ui; wherefore, as capital letters, they are still spelt Æ, œ, Ue, or Ui.

ä sounds as the English a in *ale* or ai in *faith*. Mind the difference between ä and e, especially in words like *Männer*, *fände*.

ö is exactly the French *eu* in *lieu* or *Dieu*, a sound very difficult for Englishmen to pronounce; and which, as it bears no analogy to any sound in their language, is scarcely to be described by their letters. It is the same case with—

ü, which is just like the French *u* in *plus*, *ruse*, *nul*. The English easily fall into the mistake of pronouncing both of these vowels alike: let them remember, that ö is the medium between o and e; and ü the medium between u and i. It is the fault of the Saxon dialect to pronounce ö like e; e.g., *schœen* instead of *schön*; and, what is equally wrong, some of the southern dialects confound ü with i, pronouncing *fühlen* as if it were *vielen*.

The diphthongs of a are ai, au, and äu.

In ai and au, both of the united vowels must be heard; but the sound of a must prevail in a good pronunciation: so, however, that the second vowel keeps its distinct character. Concerning the diphthong ai, avoid pronouncing it as if it were æ: e.g., *Kæiser* instead of *Kaiser*; or as ei: *Main* like *mein*. As to au, take care not to pronounce it as ao: e.g., *auch* as if it were *aoch*; *Frau* as *Frao*. The manner in which this diphthong is pronounced by the Swiss and Swabians, is considered still worse; they pass quickly over the a, dwelling rather on the u, by which means the sound becomes somewhat dull and rough.

äu is pronounced as if consisting of ä and ü, both of which are pronounced distinctly, and not to be confounded with eu, of which we shall speak hereafter.

The diphthongs ai and au are likewise to be distinguished from those words in which the syllable separates between the two vowels, as in the ancient names of persons or places; *e.g.*, Laiß, Ptolemaiß, Archelauß, Emmauß. In such words, both of the vowels are entirely distinct, and each is to be pronounced separately.

The diphthongs of e are ei and eu.

ei is exactly like the English *i* in *mile*, *ice*, *fine*. A correct pronunciation will distinguish between ei and ai: *e.g.*, between *der Leib*, *the body*, and *der Laib*, *the loaf*; the e sounds, however, rather like ä; and it is considered wrong by the people of the north to pronounce it as the Swabians and Swiss do: that is to say, to pass quickly over the e, and to dwell upon the i, as the English pronounce it in *eight*.

eu is to be distinguished from ei; its sound is broader, almost as if it were öü, and, therefore, it presents to Englishmen the same difficulties as each of these vowels in particular. They ought to pay much attention to it, as this diphthong may be called the *shibboleth* of good German pronunciation.

ie is merely a prolonged i, to be pronounced as the English *ee* in *reed*, *steel*, etc. Mark the difference between ei and ie, which diphthongs are frequently confounded by Englishmen.

About the y and its diphthongs, more will be said when treating of orthography.

The pronunciation of the consonants affords much less difficulty than that of the vowels, the greater part of them being pronounced as they are in English, or at least bearing some analogy to others of the English alphabet. A few rules will suffice.

Distinguish b and p from each other, especially before r and l. Do not pronounce *platt*, *flat*, and *daß Blatt*, *leaf*, alike; nor say, *die Bresse*, instead of *die Presse*, which is a defect of the pronunciation of some parts of Saxony, and also of some of the southern provinces, where p, in this compound state, is scarcely distinguishable from b.

An equally careful distinction should be made between *b* and *t*, as well at the beginning as at the end of the syllables. The English have, in both of the latter cases, only to follow the rules of pronunciation of their own language, which, for both of these consonants, are the same as in German.

As to *g*, notice its different pronunciation according to its position at the beginning or at the end of a syllable. In some very good dialects, it has a slight guttural aspiration at the end of the syllables. In others, as those of Lower Saxony (Hannover, Brunswick, etc.), it is always pronounced without aspiration where it sounds at the end of the syllables, as the English *gue* in *plague*, and similar words. Both of these modes of pronouncing may be acknowledged as correct; only, one should take care, in adopting either of them, to be consistent. On the other hand, it is decidedly wrong to pronounce it with an aspiration in the beginning of the syllables; or, as they do in Berlin, like *j* (*y* in *young*); e.g., eine jute jebratne Janß, instead of, eine gute gebratne Janß.

*ng*, at the end of the syllables, is pronounced exactly as it is in English; e.g., in *sterling*, *to cling*, *to bring*, etc. And this sound remains the same also when it is followed by another syllable; e.g., *der Sperling*, dat. plur. *den Sperlingen*; not as in English, in such words as *wharfinger*, *messenger*, etc. A fault in the pronunciation of Hannover and Westphalia, is the confounding *nt* and *ng*, so as to pronounce *Schtange* and *Schtanle* almost alike. In consequence of this defect, people of those provinces are heard also to pronounce the French *comment*, *serment*, as if it were, *com-mangue*, *sermangue*.

*h* is the same as in English, but serving, when placed after a vowel, only to prolong the sound; it is not heard in words like *sehen*, *nahen*, etc.

*ch* has, as in the language of the Scotch, a strong guttural sound; it is pronounced like *k* only in the beginning of such words as, *Charakter*, *Chamäleon*, *Chronik*, and others derived from Greek. On the other hand, in proper names, as *Charon*, *Charybdis*, it is better to pronounce it as a guttural. Mind, however, that it never sounds like the French *ch*; viz., as the English *sh* in *she*, *shot*, etc. This latter sound is expressed in German by *sch*.

i (S, as a consonant, *Yot*), corresponds to the English *y* before a vowel, as in *young*, *yard*, etc. It is wrong to precede it by a guttural sound, as is done in some parts of Saxony, where you hear: e.g., *ch=Jena*, instead of *Jena* (*Yena*); *ch=Jesús*, instead of *Jesús* (*Yesus*).

*K, f.* Care should be taken not to confound *kn* and *gn*, nor to pronounce these double consonants, (e.g., in *Knabe*, *Gnade*), like the English *kn* in *knight*, or *gn* in *gnash*; but the *k* and *g* must be distinctly heard.

A similar fault is the pronunciation of *pf* as a single *f*: e.g., *Flisht*, instead of *Pflisht*; *Farre*, instead of *Pfarre*. This mode of pronouncing is peculiar to Mecklenburg.

*Qu, q*, which, as the English *q*, is never without *u*, is pronounced like *ku*: e.g., *Quelle*, *quälen*.

The *r*, which at the beginning of words presents no great difficulty to the English reader, seems at the end of syllables to be more difficult for him. The following hints and diligent practice may lead to the right pronunciation. First pronounce the consonant *r* without any vowel, in the same manner as you do at the beginning of the syllables, and having acquired the practice of pronouncing it fluently, try to make it follow after a purely pronounced vowel, as if it belonged to a following word.

Thus, pronounce first *r=r=r=r*, and then, *Alta=r*, *Bä=r*, *Mee=r*, *Emi=r*, *Dh=r*, *Deh=r*, *Ratu=r*, *Gebüh=r*.

In this manner you will avoid the fault to which the English are very liable, by pronouncing it as it were *Alta=ar*, *Ratu=ar*, etc.

*er*, as a mute syllable, is exactly the same as the French *re* in *filtre*.

It is better to pronounce the *r* (both at the beginning and at the end of the syllables) with the tongue vibrating on the palate, than from the throat, in the manner which is by the French called *grassement*.

This latter manner is peculiar to the pronunciation of the people of Berlin; but elsewhere it is considered rather an impediment of speech than a beauty of pronunciation. On the other hand the rolling sound, with which this consonant is pronounced by the lower class of Frenchmen, should be as diligently avoided.



ſ at the beginning of words and syllables is pronounced like the English *s* in *rose*, or *z* in *breeze*. The single ſ at the end of syllables is similar to the English final *s*, *ss*, or *se*. Pronounce it in *Hauß* just as in *house*, in *Paradies* just as in *paradise*. ß, which, in fact, is only ff at the end of syllables, is pronounced like *ss* in *glass*. Sp and ft are best pronounced as in English. It is a fault of the dialects of the south, to pronounce those letters as if they were *sht* or *shp*; by some they are so pronounced only at the beginning of syllables, others do so even at the end, which is still worse. Pronounce it in *spinnen* as in *spin*, in *Strand* as in *strand*, in *Staat* as in *state*, in *Büste* as in *bust*, etc.

After the remarks we have made about *t*, when speaking of *d*, we notice only, that *tion* in *Nation*, *Griffion*, etc., is pronounced just as if it were *tsione*; as *Nazion*, etc. *th*, which in German has not the peculiar hissing sound of the English, and the modern Greek, serves in German only to prolong the syllable at the beginning or the conclusion of which it occurs.

ʒ is to be pronounced like *ts*. ʒ is used instead of ʒʒ only at the end of syllables, and is not to be confounded with ß.

To read well, it is as necessary to pay attention to the accent of the words as to the pronunciation of the syllables of which they are composed. The following rules, the full understanding of which can be derived only from verbal instruction, are founded on the same principles as those observed in the Saxon part of the English language.

There are in German three different degrees of accentuation.

1. The full,
2. The secondary accent, and
3. The mute syllable.

There is only one full accent in a word, which is laid on the radical portion of the word.

Enclitical syllables, and all the terminations of conjugation, declension, and most of those serving in the formation of words are mute.

The secondary accent is laid on such affixes as *heit*, *feit*, *schaft*, *ung*, *bar*, *haft*, etc., on some prefixes, as *miß*, *voll*, etc.; but we remark it chiefly in words compounded with several other words.

In such compositions, the first component is generally pronounced with the full, and the latter with the secondary accent:—

*Haũßvater, anfangen, mitleidig.\**

In verbs compounded with *unter*, *über*, *durch*, etc., the preposition has the full accent when they are separable; but when they are inseparable, the preposition has only the secondary accent, and the full accent is laid on the verb. Thus we pronounce

*ũbersehn, to translate, but, ũbersehn, to pass over.*

Respecting orthography, we offer only a few remarks to prevent errors to which the reader may be liable, by finding the same words differently spelt, in different books.

There is at present a desire to simplify German orthography, but without the eccentricity of the *Purists* of the last century. This modern orthography has been adopted by the chief political newspaper of Germany, the *Augsburg Gazette* (*Allgemeine Zeitung*), and is gaining more and more ground in the literary productions of the day. This system generally employs single letters instead of the doubled: *e. g.*, *t* instead of *tt*: *left* instead of *leftt*; *s* instead of *ss*: *dieß* instead of *dießß*, *gewiß* instead of *gewißß*; *z* instead of *tz*, especially when another *t* follows: *e. g.*, *zulezt* instead of *zulezt*, and similarly *i* instead of *te*, in words like *ging*, *fieng*, which formerly were spelt *gieng*, *fieng*, etc.

To use *c* and also *ch* in those cases where these consonants are to be pronounced as *t*, is growing more and more obsolete. Thus we spell now *consequent*, *Kritik*, *Karakter*, *Kronik*, instead of *consequent*, *Critik*, *Charakter*, *Chronik*. The *Purists* of the last century recommended to substitute *z* instead of *c* before *a*, *e*, *i*: *da*, as, *Zäsar*, *Zigero*, *Zölestin*, instead of *Cäsar*, *Cicero*, *Cölestin*; but this has been disapproved in proper names, and is but partly adopted in nouns appellative: as, *Zeder*, *Zirkus*, *Zentrum*, *Zitrone*. They likewise proposed to spell *Nazion*, *Nazion*, instead of *Nation*, *Nation*, etc., but the latter mode has generally been preserved. Nor was Wieland imitated in substituting *f* for *ph*: as, *Philosofie* instead of *Philosophie*, etc. Only in some proper names, as *Adolf*, *Mudolf*, *f* is preferred.

---

\* Denotes the full = the secondary accent, and ~ the mute syllable.

The *y*, the pronunciation of which does not differ from that of *i*, is now almost exclusively used in words originally Greek, in which it is substituted for the *Upsilon* of the latter language. It is also frequently used, as has been done in this grammar, in the infinitive of the verb *seyn*, in order to distinguish it from the possessive pronoun *sein*. In several dictionaries, we still find *zwey*, *frey*, *Mey*, *Bay*, instead of which we see in modern publications, *zwei*, *frei*, *Mai*, *Bai*, etc. In spelling words derived from Greek, care should be taken to observe the etymology of that language, and not to spell, for instance, *Hyppogriph* instead of *Hippogryph*, *Myasma* instead of *Miasma*, *Myopie* instead of *Myopia*.

It is very likely, that the system of German orthography will be still more simplified in the course of time: but the student should be cautious in imitating any new modes of spelling, however plausible they may appear, before he sees them adopted in the standard publications of Germany.

---

## APPENDIX III.

---

### RULES OF TRANSMUTATION, TO TRACE THE IDENTITY OF WORDS OCCURRING BOTH IN GERMAN AND IN ENGLISH.

It would be out of place, in an elementary work like this, to enter upon the historical affinity of the two languages, English and German. This task must be left to comparative and archæological philology. But whilst excluding, as much as possible, all that has no direct reference to the actual state of either language, it is within the legitimate province of a Grammar of Modern German, to point out the affinity of German and English, such as it still exists; and to lay down, for the guidance of the student, some practical rules, with the help of which he may trace the original German word through those transmutations which it had to undergo before assuming its present English guise. It requires no extraordinary amount of observation to find out, that "I have, I give," are the same words as, "Ich habe, Ich gebe"; but it seems rather startling at first, that "death" should be the same word as "Tod"; "oak," the same as "Eiche"; "oath," the same as "Eid." Yet, the rules of transmutation, given below, will prove it even to the most sceptical.

Let not this practice of tracing the identity of the words which still occur in both languages, be looked upon as the idle pastime of learned pedantry. Giving to the student a clearer insight into the natural features of the language, it is the surest road to render him independent of the Dictionary; an advantage which must powerfully tell in the public examinations as they are now conducted. Moreover, he who has once got into the habit of comparing the natural structure of the English with that of the German word, will find it very easy, in an incredibly short time, to master, in the same way, the Dutch language, a knowledge of which is all but indispensable at the Cape of Good Hope.

There is a list of upwards of twelve hundred words subjoined, which, with the help of the rules given below, will be found to be identical in both languages, and recognizable again when met with in the course of reading. These words, being most of them roots or primary derivations, have, of course, a great number of various offshoots, which may be formed and traced by means of the rules on derivation. Thus, by earnestly applying himself to these two short chapters, that on derivation, and that on the transmutation of words, the student will, without taxing the powers of memory, gain, by the mere force of reasoning, and by carrying given rules into practice, a knowledge of at least ten thousand German words, comprising among them the greater part of all the most indispensable terms.

There are some changes, concerning which no fixed rule can be given. These are the dropping of final consonants, and even syllables, owing to the wear and tear from which the word suffers in the course of ages. The English, who seem to be impelled by a natural instinct to reduce polysyllabic words into monosyllables, may find examples of this maiming of quite modern words in the common language of daily life: *Cab*, instead of *cabriolet*; *hack*, instead of *hackney*; *gin*, instead of *genièvre*; *cad*, instead of *conductor* (!)—not to mention *'bus*, instead of *omnibus*; *van*, instead of *caravan*, and others of the same sort—are but as many instances of the same operation of clipping, by which *feußzen* has become to sigh; *Sporn*, spur; *Sünbe*, sin; *Schraube*, screw; and *Zipfel*, tip. Another mode of arbitrary change is the transposition of consonants, owing to which, e. g., *Roß*, the old German *hros*, becomes in English *horse*; *Brett*, board; and *Brunnen*, bourn. The following rules have nothing to do with changes like these, but only with the transmutation of the consonants into their corresponding equivalents. As to the vowels, the transmutation of which is very arbitrary and fortuitous, a few remarks will be added in conclusion.

Among the rules concerning the transmutation of consonants, there is first of all to be mentioned, the law laid down by J. Grimm, and called, after him, "Grimm's law." It consists in the following division of the simple non-liquid letters, according to *Þ* sound, *Ʒ* sound, and *Ʒ* sound.

TENUES.	MEDIÆ.	ASPIRATÆ.
p	b	ph (f, v)
t	d	th
f	g	ch.

(*h* and *j* as consonants).

The law is, that, in the transmutation of the consonants, each of the three divisions (*tenues, mediae, aspiratae*) within each sound is liable to be interchanged for one of the others. *ß* may change into *b*; *b* again into *v* or *f*, and *vice versa*. The same holds good with the divisions of the *z* and *ſ* sounds. Examples of the transmutation of consonants in accordance with these rules will be found in abundance among the words contained in the list below. The same interchange of those letters is still alive with regard to dialects. The Welch "Taffy," instead of "David," is quite in keeping with the above rules; as are also Captain Fluellen's speeches in Shakespeare's "Henry V.," when he alludes to the town, "where Alexander the pig (big, the Great) was porn"; or swears "by Chesu"; and boasts of the "goot men, porn at Monmouth." More may be supplied by the every-day experience of any one who is brought into contact with natives of the different provinces and counties of the United Kingdom.

Let us now pass in detail the changes which every consonant is liable to undergo in the transmutation of the German word into English.

## B.

(Grimm's law.)

*b*, at the end of syllables, is transmuted into *v*.      *haben*, to have; *geben*, to give; *leben* to live.

*Mem.*—When transmuted into *f*,      *Leben*, life; *plur.* lives.  
as is done in some cases, it still      *Kalb*, calf; *plur.* calves.  
becomes *v* in the plural.

## G.

(All these transmutations take place at the end of syllables.)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. - <i>ch</i> transmuted into <i>k</i><br>(Grimm's law.)                                    | 1. <i>machen</i> , to make; <i>brechen</i> , to break; <i>Buch</i> , book; <i>Koch</i> , cook; <i>Storch</i> , stork. |
| 2. - <i>ch</i> transmuted into - <i>gh</i> ; and, especially, - <i>cht</i> into - <i>ght</i> | 2. <i>hoch</i> , high; <i>Nacht</i> , night; <i>recht</i> , right; <i>Flucht</i> , flight; <i>fechten</i> , to fight. |
| 3. - <i>ch</i> into - <i>ugh</i>   | 3. <i>lachen</i> , to laugh; <i>Tochter</i> , daughter.   |
| 4. - <i>chs</i> into <i>x</i>  | 4. <i>Flachs</i> , flax; <i>Wachs</i> , wax; <i>Fuchs</i> , fox; <i>nächst</i> , next.                                |
| 5. - <i>ch</i> into - <i>tch</i>   | 5. <i>Dach</i> , thatch; <i>Pech</i> , pitch; <i>waschen</i> , to watch; <i>Küche</i> , kitchen.                      |
| 6. - <i>ch</i> into - <i>tch</i>   | 6. <i>Krücke</i> , crutch; <i>Quecke</i> , quitch-grass.  |
| 7. - <i>ch</i> into <i>dg</i>  | 7. <i>Brücke</i> , bridge; <i>Mücke</i> , midge.  |

## D.

(Beginning and end of syllables.)

(Grimm's law.)

d into th

Danf, thank ; Dieb, thief ; Distel, thistle.

Bad, bath ; Bruder, brother ; Faden, fathom.

## F.

(Grimm's law.)

1. f, at the end of syllables, into p    Schaf, sheep ; Schiff, ship ; Affe, ape ; gaffen, to gape.
2. f, at the end of syllables, sometimes into v    Schaufel, shovel ; Ofen, oven.
3. f, in the beginning, into v ; only in    Fahne, vane ; Faß, vat.

## G.

1. g, in the beginning and at the end of syllables, into y.    Garn, yarn ; gällen, to yell ; gähnen, to yawn.
2. g, at the end of syllables, into -ugh.    Tag, day ; Weg, way ; sagen, to say. Pfug, plough ; genug, enough ; Trog, trough.

*Mem. 1.* — Words like *Regen*, *Segel*, were first, in the spoken language, transmuted into *ra-yen*, *sa-yel*; then contracted into *rayn* (*rayne*), *sayl* (*sayle*); after which the *y* was, in modernized orthography, changed into *i*, so that these words are now *rain*, *sail*, etc. *Vogel* (with the *v* transmuted into *f*), first became, in the spoken language, *fo-yel*; from which it was contracted into *fowl*. *Hügel*, by a similar process, first became *hi-yel*; then *hill*. *Märgel*, in the same way, first, *mar-yel*; then, *marl*.

Brägen, brain

Regen, rain

Segel, sail

Nagel, nail

Flegel, flail

Fagel, hail

Vogel, fowl

Hügel, hill

Märgel, marl

gegen, (a)gain

Ziegel, tile

(*g* transmuted into *t*:—*ti-yel*, *tile*).

*Mem. 2.*—The prefix *ge-* before *I* has been contracted in the following words into *gl*, the *t* being dropped: *Glück*, instead of *Ge-lück*; *gleich*, instead of *ge-leich*; *glauben*, instead of *ge-lauben*. — The prefix *ge-* of the participle past is found in the lan-

Glück, luck

gleich, like (*g* into *k*)

glauben, to believe

(*b*, at the end of the root, changed into *v*; and the prefix *ge-* exchanged for that of *be-*; as it

guage of Chaucer under the form of *y*; e g., *y-sproken*, *y-broken*, *ge-sprochen*, *ge-brochen*. It is still extant in the English language of this day, in the word *yclept*, which is neither more nor less than the participle past of the verb *to clepe*, with the prefix *y*.

were, *be-lieve*, instead of *y-lieve*).

### ſ (consonant).

*ſ* transmuted into *y*

*ſahr*, year; *jung*, young; *ja*, yea; *jezt*, yet; *jener*, yon; *ſoch*, yoke.

### k.

1. *k*, in the beginning, into *c*

*Kabel*, cable; *Kanne*, can; *Korn*, corn; *kochen*, to cook.

2. *k*, in the beginning and end, into *ch*

(Grimm's law.)

*Kalk*, chalk; *Käse*, cheese; *kauen*, to chew; *Kinn*, chin; *Kerl*, churl. *Bank*, bench; *Fink*, finch; *Stank*, stench.

### l.

The ending *-el* changed into *-le*

*Nadel*, needle; *Spindel*, spindle; *Pudel*, poodle.

### m.

Double *-mm*, at the end of syllables, sometimes changed into *-mb*

*Lamm*, lamb; *Kamm*, comb; *klimmen*, to climb; *Gummel*, humble-bee; *Daumen*, thumb.

### n.

The ending *-en* changed, in English, into *-om*

*Besen*, besom; *Busen*, bosom; *Faden*, fathom; *ſelten*, seldom.

### p.

*pf* drops the *f* in the beginning and end of syllables

*Pfeife*, pipe; *Tropfen*, drop; *Kropf*, crop; *tüpfen*, to tip; *Pfund*, pound; *Pflicht*, plighted duty.



## C.

1. *c*, at the end, in a few words *Haſe*, hare.  
transmuted into *r*
2. *ſch*, with a consonant following, *ſchiff*, ship; *ſchaf*, sheep.  
and at the end of syllables, *Fiſch*, fish; *Buſch*, bush.  
*sh*
3. *ſch*, in the beginning, changed, *ſchurz*, skirt; *ſchippe*, scoop;  
in some words, into *sc-* or *sk-*  
*ſchinden*, to skin; *ſchelten*, to scold;  
*ſcheuern*, to scour.
4. *ſch*, before consonants, changed *ſchlau*, sly; *ſchmied*, smith; *ſchnee*,  
into *s* snow; *ſchwan*, swan.
5. Double *ff*, or *ß*, at the end, *daß*, that; *ſpieß*, spit; *Waſſer*,  
changed into *t*, or *tt*. water; *Fuß*, foot; *Reſſel*, kettle;  
*Neſſel*, nettle; *Raſſel*, rattle.

## T.

(Grimm's law.)

- t* transmuted into *d*.  
*th*, having no distinct sound in German, as in English, follows the same rule as *t*.
- Tag*, day; *tapfer*, dapper; *Taube*, dove; *taub*, deaf; *tauchen*, to duck; *thun* (*thu-en*), to do; *treiben*, to drive; *gleiten*, to glide; *leiten*, to lead.
- Tob*, death; (the *t* of the beginning transmuted into *d*; and the *b* of the end, into *th*).

## B.

- v* transmuted, in some words, into *f* *Water*, father; *Vogel*, fowl; *vier*, four; *Wolf*, folk; *voll*, full; *vor*, be-fore.

## 3.

- z* (*ts*) changed into *t*, as well in the beginning as at the end of syllables. *zinn*, tin; *Zunge*, tongue; *zählen*, to tell, to count; *grunzen*, to grunt; *Schmerz*, smart; *Herz*, heart.

A peculiar change is to be noticed with regard to words in which *r* or *l* at the end of the radical syllable is followed by *g*, *f* or *ch*. These latter consonants are changed in English into *ow*, and the consonant *r* or *l* is doubled. This change takes place in the following words.

borgen, to borrow.	Marr, marrow.
Sorge, sorrow.	folgen, to follow.
morgen, to-morrow.	Falg, tallow.
Furche, furrow.	Blaß-falg, bellows.
Ferfel, farrow.	Galgen, gallows.

and also—

höhl, hollow	Pfühl, pillow.
--------------	----------------

besides—

gelb, yellow.	Schnalze, swallow.
---------------	--------------------

The laws concerning the transmutation of vowels are principally based on a pronunciation and orthography which have vanished from the modern language, both English and German. As a general rule there may be stated, that long vowels are not changed into other short ones, nor, *vice versa*, short vowels into other long ones; e.g., *Schaf*, becomes sheep; *Schiff*, ship. In both these cases the original force of the vowel is retained. Thus we have—

LONG.	LONG.	SHORT.
Straße, street.	Stute, steed.	alt, old, falt, cold.
Stahl, steel.	sputen, to speed.	halten, to hold.
Schlaf, sleep.	suchen, to seek.	fasten to fold.

The radical vowel *ie* is transmuted into *o* in—

lieben, to love.	schieben, to shove.	schießen, to shoot.
------------------	---------------------	---------------------

Transmutations being first made in the spoken language, before they are fixed in the written, many words now spelled in German with *ü*,—the modified vowel of *u*,—have in English a vowel, which has the sound of *e* in *to be*, or of *i* in *lip*; for no other reason, but because in ancient German pronunciation *ü* seems to have partaken more of the *e* sound than it does now in what is considered the correct modern pronunciation.

We have, therefore:—

bünn, thin.	grüßen, to greet.	küssen, to kiss.
fühlen, to feel.	Gürtel, girdle.	lüften, to lift.
füllen, to fill.	Krüppel, cripple.	Pfühl, pillow.
grün, green.	fühn, keen.	übel, evil.

In the following group of verbs, the vowel *ä* and *ü* is transmuted into *ow*.

glühen, to glow.	fräßen, to crow.
blühen, to blow, to bloom.	mähen, to mow.
bläsen, to blow, to inflate.	säen, to sow.

The following examples prove beyond the possibility of a doubt the uniformity of German pronunciation in the North and South with regard to the vowels and diphthongs, at the time when Anglo-Saxon branched off from the mother stock. They are of great interest to the archæological philologist, and, at the same time, very instructive to the student of the modern language.

In Middle High German (the language from the 12th to 15th century), some of the words, which are now spelt with *ei*, have the same diphthong, others have *i*; e.g., *heißen* is spelt the same as it is now, *Leib* is spelt *lip*. Likewise, some of the words which are now spelt with *au*, have in the ancient language the diphthong *ow* or *ou*, others have *û*; e.g., *Frau*, *frow*, *Hauss*, *hûs*. The difference of pronunciation was long kept up between these different groups of words, and not so very long ago, the spelling *ai* was still used instead of the original *ei*; e.g., *Gais*, *Niche*, *Aib*, instead of *Geis*, *Eiche*, *Eib*, whilst *ei* did duty for *i*; e.g., *Leib*, *Preis*, *reich*, *Wein*, which in the ancient spelling were *lip*, *wip*, *rik*, *win*.

Now, it is a most remarkable fact, that whilst the ancient difference of pronunciation of these diphthongs exists to this day in the Swabian, Alemannic, and Swiss dialects, the English spelling and pronunciation of the words, in which those diphthongs and vowels occur, draws with the strictest consistency the difference between the original *ei* and *i*, pronounced in those South Western dialects *ai* and *ei*, and between the original *ou* and *û*, pronounced *ao* and *ai*, as the following synopsis will show.

<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>
originally spelt <i>ei</i> , afterwards <i>ai</i> , pronounced in Swabia <i>ai</i> , transmuted in English into <i>o</i> sound, <i>o</i> or <i>oa</i> .	originally spelt <i>i</i> , pronounced in Swabia <i>ei</i> , transmuted in English into <i>i</i> .
<i>breit</i> , broad.	<i>Messe</i> , mile.
<i>Eiche</i> , oak.	<i>Pfeife</i> , pipe.
<i>Eib</i> , oath.	<i>Preis</i> , price.
<i>Geis</i> , goat.	<i>reich</i> , rich.
<i>heiß</i> , hot.	<i>reif</i> , ripe.
<i>Kleid</i> , cloth.	<i>reiten</i> , ride.
<i>Laib</i> , loaf.	<i>Seite</i> , side.
<i>Seife</i> , soap.	<i>stiff</i> , stiff.
<i>Speiche</i> , spoke.	<i>treiben</i> , to drive.

## au

originally spelt *u*, pronounced in Swabia *au*, spelt in English *ou* or *ow*, or transmuted into *i* or *y*.

Faust, fist.  
 Haus, house.  
 Haut, hide.  
 lauschēn, listen.  
 laut, loud.  
 Maus, mouse.  
 rauß, rough.  
 Sau, sow.  
 saugen, to suck.  
 saufen, to sip.  
 schlau, sly  
 Schnauze, snout.

## au

originally spelt *ou*, pronounced in Swabia *do*, transmuted in English into *e* sound, *ea*, *e* or *ie*.

Haupt, head.  
 glauben (ge-lauben), believe.  
 Laub, leaf.  
 Lauch, leek  
 laufen, to leap, to run.  
 Pfau, pea-cock.  
 rauchen, to reek.  
 Saum, seam.  
 taub, deaf.  
 Traum, dream.  
 Team, team.  
 Auge, eye (g changed into y).

This coincidence will be found the more remarkable, when it is considered, that the Angles lived in the extreme North of Germany, whilst Middle High German literature flourished principally in the South; and that when its masterpieces were written, a considerable dialectical difference had already sprung up between the Southern and Northern provinces. Here is, then, a proof from a living German dialect, which an English philologist may perhaps find corroborated by some of the many interesting dialectical shadings of his own language, that at one time your Saxon ancestors and the inhabitants of Swabia and Alemannia not only spoke the same language, but pronounced it according to the same principles; which is more than can be said of the German tribes of the present day.

LIST OF WORDS INTRODUCED, OR TRANSMUTED, FROM  
GERMAN INTO ENGLISH.

## A.

Aal, eel  
ab, off  
acht, eight  
Acker, acre  
Affe, ape  
affen, to ape  
Able, awl  
Aehre, ear  
all, all  
als, as  
alt, old  
an, on  
angeln, to angle  
Apfel, apple  
Arm, arm  
Asche, ashes  
auch, (the obsolete *eke*), also  
auf, up  
Auge, eye  
aus, out  
Auster, oyster (*ostrea*)  
Axt, axe.

## B.

babbeln, to babble  
backen, to bake  
Bad, bath  
Biere, beer  
Bai, bay  
Bake, beacon  
Ball, ball  
Ballast, ballast

Ballen, bale  
Bank, bank  
Bär, bear  
Barke, bark  
Barsch, perch  
Bart, beard  
Bast, bast  
Baum, (beam), tree  
Becher, beaker  
Beere, berry  
beginnen, to begin  
beide, both  
Beil, bill (bill-hook)  
Bein, bone  
beißen, to bite  
bellen, to bellow  
bereit (be-reit), ready  
bersten, to burst  
Besen, besom  
besser, better  
best, best  
Bett, bed  
Beule, boil  
Beute, booty  
Biber, beaver  
Biene, bee  
Bier, beer  
bieten, to bid  
ich bin, I be  
binden, to bind  
Birke, birch  
Birne, pear (from *pirum*)  
bitten, beten, bieten, to bid

bitter, bitter  
 bläßen, } to blow  
 blasen, }  
 Blatt, blade  
 Blatter, bladder  
 blau, blue  
 blind, blind  
 Block, block  
 blüßen, to blow  
 Blume, bloom  
 Blut, blood  
 Bock, buck  
 Boden, bottom  
 Bogen, bow  
 Bohne, bean  
 bohren, to bore (*forare*)  
 böfeln, to pickle (inventor, *Wilh. Bökel*, 1337)  
 Bolz, bolt  
 Boot, boat  
 borgen, to borrow  
 Borke, bark  
 Born, bourne  
 Borste, bristle  
 böß, bad  
 Braue, brow  
 brauen, to brew  
 braun, brown  
 Braufche, bruise  
 Braut, bride  
 brechen, to break  
 Bregen, brain  
 breit, broad  
 brennen, to burn  
 Brett, board  
 bringen, to bring  
 Brink, brink  
 Brot, bread  
 Bruder, brother  
 Brühe, broth  
 brüllen, to brawl, to roar

Brunnen, bourne  
 Brust, breast  
 brüten, to brood  
 Bube, boy (babe)  
 Buch, book  
 Buche, beech  
 Buchs, box-tree  
 Buchse, box (*πύξις*)  
 Bucht, bight  
 Buchweizen, buckwheat  
 Bude, booth  
 Büffel, buffalo (from the Greek, *βούβαλος*)  
 Bull, bull  
 Bürde, burden  
 Burg, borough, -burgh, castle  
 Bürge (from *borgen*, to borrow), se-  
 Busch, bush [curity  
 Busen, bosom  
 Büttel, beadle  
 Butter, butter.

## D.

Dach, thatch  
 Damm, dam  
 dämmern (same root as *dim*); Däm-  
 merung, twilight  
 Dampf, damp  
 Dank, thanks  
 dar, there  
 daß, that  
 Dattel, date (from the Greek, *δάκτυλος*)  
 Daumen, thumb  
 decken, to deck  
 Degen, dagger (from *dig*), sword  
 Deich, dyke  
 Deichsel, thill (a carriage-pole)  
 dein, thy  
 denken, to think  
 denn, than

der, die, das, the

dicht, } thick  
dicke, }

Dieb, thief

Diele, deal

dieser, this

Dill, Till, dill (dill-seed)

Dille, till

Ding, thing

Distel, thistle

doch, though

die Docke, dock (from *ducere*)

Dogge (derived from the Engl. *dog*)

Dohle, daw

Donner, thunder

doppelt, double (from the Latin  
*duplus*)

Dorf, -thorp (as compound of proper  
names in towns; e. g., Cleethorp),  
village

Drache, dragon (Latin, *drago*)

Drache (Swed. *And-drake*, *Wenterich*),  
drake

Dred, (dregs), dirt

dreschen, to thrash

drei, three

bringen, } to throng  
drängen, }

drohen, to threaten

drollig, droll (from the French *drôle*)

Drossel, throistle

du, thou

ducken (tauchen), to duck

dulden, to thole, to suffer

dumm, (*dumb*), stupid

Dung, dung

dünn, thin

Durst, thirst

Duzend, dozen (the English word  
formed from French).

£.

Ebbe, ebb

Ebenholz, ebony (from the Greek,  
*ἔβενος*)

Edge, edge

edel (Anglo-Sax. *ædel*), noble

eh, eher, ere

Eiche, oak

Eid, oath

eigen, own

Eisen, iron

etel, idle

elf, eleven

Ell, ell

Ende, end

Engel, angel (both from the Latin  
*angelus*)

Ernst, earnest

Esche, ash

Esel, ass

essen, to eat

Eule, owl

Euter, udder

ewig, (ever), eternal

Ey, egg.

£.

Fabel, fable (both from the Latin  
*fabula*)

Faden, fathom

fahl, fallow

Fahne, vane

fahren, erfahren, to fare

fallen, to fall

Falk, falcon (both from the Latin  
*falco*)

falsch, false (both from the Latin  
*falsus*)

fasten, to fold

Farnkraut, fern

Faß, vat

faſten, to faſt	Flur, floor
faul, foul (rotten)	Flut, flood
ſaum, foam	Fohlen, foal
Fauſt, fiſt	Föhre, fir
fechten, to fight	folgen, to follow
Feder, feather	förder, fürder, further
Fee, fai-ry	Forſt, foreſt (from the Latin <i>foras</i> ; Mediaeval Latin <i>foreſta</i> )
fehlen, to fail	Frack, frock
Feige, fig (both from the Lat. <i>ficus</i> )	frei, free
fein, fine (both from the Lat. <i>finire</i> )	Freitag, Friday
Feind, fiend	Freund, friend
Feld, field	frieren, to freeze
Fenn, fen	Frieß, freeze
Fenchel, fennel (both from the Latin <i>feniculum</i> )	friſch, fresh
Ferding (Wierding), farthing	froh (the root in <i>frolick</i> ), glad
Ferkel, farrow	Froſch (Anglo-Saxon <i>froſk</i> ), frog
fern, far	Frucht, fruit (both from the Latin <i>fructus</i> )
Feffel, fetter	Fuchs, fox
feſt, faſt	fühlen, to feel
fett, fat	füllen, to fill
Fidel, fiddle (both from the Latin <i>fides</i> , the ſtring)	für, for
Filz, felt	Furche, furrow
finden, to find	Furcht, fear
Finger, finger	fürchten, to fear
Finne, fin	Fürſt, the prince, the <i>fiſt</i> man (ſuperlat. of <i>für</i> , the foremoſt)
Fiſch, fiſh	Furt, ford
Flachſ, flax	Fuß, foot
flackern, to flack, to flicker	Futter, food, fodder.
Fladen, a flat cake	
flattern, to flutter	
Flebermauſ, fluttermouse, bat	
Fleiſch, fleſh	
fliegen, fliegen, to fly; Fliege, fly;	
Flöh, flea; Flucht, flight; etc.	
Fließ, fleece	
fließen, to flow	
Flocke, flock	
Flöte, flute (both from Latin <i>flare</i> )	
Flotte, fleet	

## G.

Gabel, (gable), fork
gaden, to cackle, to gaggle
gaſſen, to gape
gähnen, to yawn
Gaiß, Geiß, goat
Galgen, gallows
Galle, gall
gällen to yell



③aß, goose	③rund, ground
③arn, yarn	grunzen, to grunt
③arten, garden ( <i>yard</i> )	③rüge, groats
③äſcht, ③iſcht, yeast	③urgel (root in <i>gargle</i> ), the throat
③aſt, guest	③urſe, gherkin
③aumen, ( <i>gum</i> ), the palate	③urt, ③ürtel, girdle
gebären, to bear	gut, good.
geben, to give	
gehen (gangen), to go ( <i>Scotch, to gang</i> )	§.
gelb, yellow	③aar, hair
genug, enough	haben, to have
geſtern, yesterday	③aſſe, hatchet
geſund, sound	③afen, haven
③ericht, weight	③agel, hail
gewinnen, to win	③ag, ③eſſe, hedge
gewöhnt, wonted	③ahn, see ③enne
③iebel, gable	③afen, hook
③ilde, guild	halb, half
③laß, glass	③alle, hall
③lauben (③e-lauben), belief	③alm, haulm
gleich (ge-leiſ), like	halten, to hold
gleißen, to glisten	③ammer, hammer
gleiten, to glide	③and, hand
glimmen, to gleam, to glimmer	hängen, to hang
③lück (③e-lück), luck	③arfe, harp
③old, gold	③äring, herring
③olf, gulf (κόλπος, <i>golſo, golſe</i> )	③arniſch, ( <i>harness</i> ), cuirass
③ölle, yawl (γαῦλος, <i>gaulus</i> )	③arpune, harpoon
③ott, God	harſch, harsh
③rab, grave	hart, hard
③raß, grass	③aſe, hare
grau, gray	③aſſe, hasp
greifen, to gripe	haffen, to hate
③riebe or ③rübe, greaves (tallow greaves)	③aſt, haste
③rieß, grit	③aubitz, howitzer
grimm, grim	hauen, to hew
groß, gruff	③aufen, heap
groß, great	③aupt, head
grün, green	③auß, house
grüßen, to greet	③aut, hide
	heben, to heave

Hechel, heckle  
 Heerde, herd  
 die Heide, heath  
 der Heide, heathen  
 heil, hail  
 heilig, holy  
 heim, home  
 heiß, hot  
 helfen, to help  
 Helm, helmet, helm  
 hemmen, to hem (in)  
 Henne, hen  
 Herbst, (*harvest*), autumn  
 Herz, hearth  
 Herz, heart  
 Heu, hay  
 heuern, to hire  
 heulen, to howl  
 Here, hag  
 hier, here  
 hindern, to hinder  
 Hindin, hind (female of a stag)  
 hinten, behind  
 Hirsch (Hirz), hart  
 Hirte (from Heerde), herdsman  
 Hitze, heat  
 hoch, high  
 Hof, (*hovel*), a farm  
 hoffen, to hope  
 hohl, hollow  
 holen, (to haul), to fetch  
 Hölle, hell  
 Holm, holm  
 Honig, honey  
 Hopfen, hop  
 Horde, horde  
 hören, to hear  
 Horn, horn  
 Horniß, hornet  
 Hose, (*hose*), trousers  
 Huf, hoof

Hüfte, hip  
 Hügel, hill  
 Huhn, hen (see Henne)  
 Hummel, humble-bee  
 Hund, hound  
 Hunger, hunger  
 hüpfen, to hop  
 Hürde, hurdle  
 hurtig, hurry  
 Hut, (*hood*), hat  
 Hütte, hut.

3 (as consonant).

ja, yea  
 Jacke, jacket  
 Jahr, year  
 jener, yon  
 jetzt, yet  
 Joch, yoke  
 jung, young  
 just, just (*adv.*)  
 Jewel, jewel (*joyau*).

R.

Kabel, cable  
 Kabestan, capstan  
 Käfer, chafer  
 Raff, chaff  
 Kahn, canoe  
 Kai, quay  
 Kalf, calf  
 Kalk, chalk  
 kalt, cold  
 Kamm, comb  
 Kammmer (from the Latin *camera*),  
 chamber (fr. the French *chambre*)  
 Kaninchen, coney (Latin *cuniculus*)  
 Kanne, can  
 Kappe, cap  
 Karte, Kartetsche, card (Latin *car-*  
*duus*)

M

Karre, cart	Knopf, knob
Karren, car	Knoten, knot
Käse, cheese	knüpfen, ( <i>to knit</i> ), to tie, to unite
Katze, cat	{ Koch, cook
kauen, to chew	{ kochen, to cook
kauern, to cower	Kohl, kale ( <i>cole-wort</i> )
Keel, keel	kommen, to come
kelfen, to cough, to caw	König, king
Kelch, chalice (Latin <i>calix</i> )	Korn, corn
Keller, cellar (Latin <i>cella</i> )	Kork, cork
kennen, (the Scotch <i>to ken</i> ), to know	kosten, to cost
Kerbel, chervil	Krabbe, crab
Kerl, churl	krabbeln, to crawl
Kern, kernel	krachen, to creak
Kessel, kettle	Kragen, (Scotch <i>craig</i> ), the collar
Kiel, keel	{ Krähe, crow
kiesen, choose	{ krähen, to crow
Kind, child	Kraupf, cramp
Kinn, chin	ranich, crane
Kirche, church ( <i>kirk</i> )	kragen, to grate, to scratch
Kirsche, cherry (from Lat. <i>cerasus</i> )	Kresse, cress
Kissen, cushion (French <i>coussin</i> )	Kreuz, cross (from Latin <i>cruz</i> )
Kiste, chest (Latin <i>cista</i> )	Krone, crown (Latin <i>corona</i> )
klaffen, to cleave (see fließen)	Kropf, crop (of a bird)
klar, clear (Latin <i>clarus</i> )	Krücke, crutch
kleiben, kleben, to cleave to	Krug, crook, cruse
Kleid, cloth, dress	Krume, crumb
klein, ( <i>clean</i> ), small	Krüppel, cripple
klieben, to cleave	Kruste, crust
klimmen, to climb	Küche, kitchen
Klippe, cliff	Kuchen, cake
klöpfen, to clap, to knock	Küchlein, chicken
Kloß, clod	Kuckuck, cuckoo
Kluft, cleft	Kuh, cow
Klump, clump, lump	kühl, cool
knacken, to knock, to knock	kühn, ( <i>keen</i> ), bold
Knall, ( <i>knell</i> ), a loud report	Kümmel, cummin
Knelp, a shoemaker's knife	kurz, ( <i>curt</i> ), short
knetsen, to nip	küssen, to kiss
kneten, to knead	Küste, coast.
Knie, knee	

## L.

Lache, lake  
 lachen, to laugh  
 laden, to load, to lade  
 Laden, (*lid*), shutter  
 Lager, *n.*, (*leaguer, layer*), camp  
 lahmi, lame  
 Laib, loaf  
 Lamm, lamb  
 Land, land  
 lang, long  
 Lappen, (*lap* of the ear), a rag  
 lappen, to lap  
 Lärche, larch (Latin *larix*)  
 lassen, to let  
 laß, lazy (Latin *lassus*)  
 Latte, lath  
 Laub, (*leaf*), foliage  
 Lauch, leek  
 lauern, (inst. of lauren), to lurk  
 laufen, (*to leap*), to run  
 Laus, louse  
 lauschen, to listen  
 laut, loud  
 Laute, lute (from the Arabic *El Ud*;  
 Burton's "Mecca and Medina,"

iii. 335)

leben, to live  
 Leber, liver  
 Leck, leak  
 lecken, to lick  
 Leder, leather  
 legen, to lay  
 Lehen (Anlehen), loan  
 Lehm, loam  
 leihen, to lend  
 leicht, light  
 Leib, load (of sorrow)  
 Lein, *m.*, (*lin-seed*), flax  
 Leine, *f.*, line  
 Leiste, *f.*, list

Leisten, *m.*, last  
 leiten, to lead  
 Leiter, *f.*, ladder  
 Lende, loin  
 Lenz, (*lent*), spring time  
 Lerche, lark  
 lernen, to learn  
 leht, last  
 leuchten, to light  
 Licht, light  
 lieben, to love  
 liegen, to lie  
 Linde, linden-tree  
 Lippe, lip  
 lispeln, to lisp  
 Locke, lock (of hair)  
 Lohn, (*loan*), reward  
 Los, lot  
 los, loose  
 Löwe, lion (Latin *leo*)  
 Luft, (root of *lofty*), air  
 lüften, to lift, to air  
 Lunge, lungs  
 Linse, linch-pin  
 Lunte (*lint*), slow match  
 Lust, lust.

## M.

machen, to make  
 Macht, might  
 mager, meagre (Latin *macer*)  
 mähen, to mow  
 Mahl, meal  
 mahlen, (*to mill*), to grind  
 Mähne, mane  
 Mähre, mare  
 Malz, malt  
 manch (mannig), many  
 Mangle, mangle  
 Mann, man  
 Mantel, mantle

Marter, marten, martern  
 Märgel, marl  
 Marf, *n.*, marrow  
 Marf, *f.*, march, mark  
 Markt, market (from the Latin  
     *mercari*)  
 Masche, mesh  
 Maser, measles  
 Mast, *m.*, mast  
 Mast, *f.*, mast (beech-mast)  
 Matte, mat  
 Maulbeere, mulberry  
 Maultesel, } mule (Latin *mulus*;  
 Maulthier, } French *mule*)  
 Maulwurf, mole  
 Maus, mouse  
 mausen, mausern, to mew  
 mehr, more (Scotch *mair*)  
 Meile, mile (Latin *milliare*)  
 mein, my  
 meinen, to mean  
 meischen, to mash  
 meist, most  
 Meister, master (from the Latin  
     *magister*)  
 melken, to milk  
 mengen, to mingle  
 merken, to mark  
 messen, (*to mete*), to measure  
 Meth, mead  
 Miene, mien  
 Miete, mite  
 Milch, milk  
 mild, mild  
 Mitte, Mittel, middle  
 Moor, moor  
 Monat, Monath, month  
 Mond, moon  
 Moos, moss  
 Mord, murder  
 morgen, to-morrow

Morgen, morning  
 Most, must  
 Mostich, mustard  
 Motte, moth  
 Mücke, midge  
 Muff, muff  
 Mühle, mill  
 Müller, miller  
 Mund, mouth  
 Münze, mint (in both meanings:  
     mint, a plant; and mint, where  
     money is made)  
 müssen, (*I must*), to be obliged  
 Muster, (*to muster*), the model.

## N.

Nabe, a nave  
 Nabel, navel  
 Nachbar, neighbour  
 Nacht, night  
 Nachtigall, nightingale  
 Nacken, neck  
 nackt, naked  
 Nadel, needle  
 Nagel, nail  
 nagen, to gnaw  
 nahe, neigh  
 nähren, to nurse, to nourish  
 Name, name  
 Nase, nose  
 Neffe, nephew (*Nichte*, instead of  
     *Niste*, niece)  
 Neger, negro (from *niger*)  
 nehmen, (*to nim*), to take  
 nein, no  
 Nessel, nettle  
 Nest, nest  
 nett, neat  
 Netz, net  
 neu, new  
 nicht, not, (*nought*)

Nichte, see Neffe

nieder, (nether, under-neath), low

nieblich, neat

niesen, to sneeze

Niß, nits

Nonne, nun

Nord, north

Noth, need

nun, now

Nuß, nut.

### D.

ob, if

oben, ab-ove

ober, upper

Ochs, ox

ober, or

Ofen, oven

offen, open

oft, oft, often

Ohr, ear

Del, oil

Opfert, offering (from the Latin  
*offerre*)

Ost, east

Ostern, easter

Otter, adder, and otter.

### P.

Pack, pack (sich packen, to pack off)

Pappe, pap

Pappel, poplar (French *peuplier*)

Papst, pope (Latin *papa*)

Paar, pair

Pastete, pasty (Mediæval Latin  
*pastata*, from *pasta*)

Pech, pitch (Latin *pix*)

Pein, pain

Pelz, (*pelisse*), fur

Perle, pearl

Pfad, path

Pfahl, pale

Pfand, (*pawn, pound*), pledge

Pfanne, pan

Pfarre, parish (Latin *parochia*)

Pfau, pea-cock

Pfeffer, pepper

Pfeife, pipe

Pfennig, penny

Pferd, (*park*), a sheepfold

Pfingsten, pentecost

Pipp, Pipp, pip

Pflaster, plaister

Pflaume, plum

Pflicht, (*plighted*), duty

Pflock, plug

pflücken, to pluck

Pflug, plough

Pfote, paw

Pfropf, prop

Pfuhl, pool

Pfühl, pillow

Pfund, pound

picken, to peck

Pilger, pilgrim

plappern, to blab

platt, flat

plündern, to plunder

Polster, bolster

prangen, to prank

Preis, prize, price, praise

preisen, to praise

prickeln, to prick

Priester, priest (Latin *presbyter*)

Pudel, poodle

Pumpe, pump

Puppe, puppet (Latin *pupa*).

### D.

quabbelig, squab

quackeln, to quake

quacken, to quack

Qualm, qualm  
 Quappe, quab  
 Quarz, quartz  
 quatschen, to squash  
 Quecke, quitch-grass  
 Quecksilber, quicksilver  
 queer, (*queer*), right across  
 Quelle, well.

## R.

Rabe, raven  
 Rache, (*o wreak*), vengeance  
 raffen, to raff  
 Rahmen, rim  
 Ralle, Rall, rail, (land-rail)  
 Rang, rank  
 ranzig, raneid (Latin *rancidus*)  
 Rapps, rape, (rape-seed)  
 rasch, rash  
 Raspel, rasp  
 rasseln, to rattle  
 Raft, rest  
 rauben, to rob  
 rauchen, to reek  
 raufen, (*to reap*), to pluck  
 rauh, rauh, rough  
 Raum, room  
 rauschen, to rush  
 Raute, rue (Lat. *ruta*)  
 Rechen, rake  
 rechnen, to reckon  
 Recht, right  
 reden, (*to read*), to speak  
 Rhebe, (road), roadstead  
 Reff, reef  
 Regen, rain  
 Reih, roe  
 reiben, to rub  
 reich, rich  
 reichen, to reach  
 reif, ripe

Reihe, row  
 Reim, rhyme  
 reiten, to ride  
 rennen, to run  
 Renntier, reindeer  
 Rettich, radish (from Latin *radix*)  
 Reue, (*to rue*), repentance  
 Ried, reed  
 Riff, reef  
 Rinde, rind  
 Ring, ring  
 ringen, to wring  
 rinnen, to run  
 Rippe, rib  
 Roche, rook (in chess)  
 Roche, roach, ray  
 Roger, roe, roan  
 rollen, to roll  
 roh, raw  
 Rümer, rummer  
 Rose, rose (Latin *rosa*)  
 Rost, rust  
 rösten, to roast  
 Ross, horse (Old High Germ. *hros*)  
 roth, red  
 rotten, außrotten, to root out  
 Rübe, (*rape*), turnip  
 Rücken, (*ridge*), back; Bergrücken,  
 ridge of hills  
 Ruder, rudder  
 rummeln, to rumble  
 Rumpf, rump  
 rund, round  
 Ruthe, rod  
 rütteln, (*to rattle*), to shake.

## S.

Saal, saloon  
 Saat, seed  
 Sache, (*sake*, in the phrase, "for  
 the sake of"), thing

Sack, sack	scheinen, to shine
säen, to sow	schelten, to scold
Saft, sap	Schenkel, shank
sägen, to saw	scheu, shy
sagen, to say	scheuern, to scour
Salbe, salve	schieben, to shove
Salz, salt	Schienbein, shin
Sand, sand	schielen, ( <i>to scowl</i> ), to squint
sanft, soft	schießen, to shoot
Sattel, saddle	Schiff, ship, skip
Sau, sow	Schild, shield
sauer, sour	Schippe, scoop
saufen, to sip, to sup	Schlacht, slaughter, or battle
saugen, to suck	schlachten, to slaughter
Saum, seam	Schlaf, sleep
Saumthier, sumpter horse	schlagen, ( <i>to slay</i> ), to strike
Schabe, scab ( <i>Latin scabies</i> )	Schlamm, slime
schaben, to shave	Schlappe, slap
schäbig, shabby	schlau, sly
Schacht, shaft ( <i>in a mine</i> )	Schlauch, slough ( <i>in the meaning</i>
schaden, to scathe ( <i>unscathed</i> )	of skin, in Shakespeare)
Schaf, sheep	Schlehe, sloe
schaffen, ( <i>to shape</i> ), to create	schleichen, to slink
Schaffot, scaffold ( <i>French échafaud</i> )	Schleim, slime
Schaft, shaft	schleifen, to slit
Schale, shell	schlimm, ( <i>slim</i> ), bad
Schalmei, shalm ( <i>from the Latin</i>	Schlinge, ( <i>sling</i> ), a snare
<i>calamus</i> )	Schlitten, ( <i>slide</i> ), a sledge
Scham, shame	Schlummer, slumber
scharf, sharp	schlüpfen, to slip
Schärpe, scarf	Schmacke, smack
Scharte, shard	schmal, ( <i>small</i> ), narrow
Schatten, shade, shadow	Schmalte, smalt
Schaub, sheaf	Schmauch, smoke
schauen, to see, to look at (Schauspiel, a spectacle, a show; thence the English verb <i>to show</i> )	schmecken, to smack, to taste
Schaufel, shovel	Schmeer, ( <i>to smear</i> ), grease
Schaum, scum	schmetzen, to smite
Schere, shear	schmelzen, to smelt
Scheide, sheath	Schmerz, smart
	Schmied, smith
	schmieren, to smear



ſchmuggeln, to smuggle	ſelber, ſelbſt, ſelf
ſchmutz, smut, dirt	ſelten, ſeldom
ſchnappen, to snap	ſenden, to ſend
ſchnarchen, to snore	ſengen, to ſinge
ſchnauben, ( <i>to sniff</i> ), to breathe	ſeufzen, to ſigh
ſchnauze, snout	ſiechel, ſickle
ſchnee, ſnow	ſieb, ſieve
ſchnepfe, ( <i>snipe</i> ), woodcock	ſiech, ſick
ſchon, ( <i>soon</i> ), already	ſieden, to ſeethe
ſchöpfen, to ſcoop	ſiegel, ſeal ( <i>sigillum</i> )
ſchraube, ſcrew	ſilber, ſilver
ſchrein, ( <i>shrine</i> ), cupboard	ſingen, to ſing
ſchuh, ſhoe	ſinken, to ſink
ſchule, ſchool ( <i>Latin schola</i> )	ſitzen, to ſit ( <i>ſetzen, to ſet</i> )
ſchulter, ſhoulder	ſo, ſo
ſchurz, ( <i>skirt</i> ), apron	ſoße, ſock ( <i>from Latin soccus</i> )
ſchütten, to ſhed	ſode, ſod, ſod
ſchwalbe, ſwallow	ſohle, ſole
ſchwan, ſwan	ſohn, ſon
ſchwarm, ſwarm	ſolch, ſuch
ſchwarte, ſward	ſollen, ( <i>shall</i> ), to be obliged
ſchwarz, ( <i>swarthy</i> ), black	ſommer, ſummer
ſchweifen, ( <i>to sweep</i> ), to roam	ſondern, ( <i>asunder</i> ), to ſeparate
ſchwein, ſwine	ſonne, ſun
ſchweiß, ſweat	ſorge, ſorrow
ſchwelgen, ( <i>to swill, to swallow</i> ), to luxuriate	ſpähen, to eſpy
ſchwelle, ( <i>sill</i> ), threshold	ſpalten, to ſpelt, to ſplit
ſchwellen, to ſwell	ſpannen, to ſpan
ſchwert, ſword	ſparen, to ſpare
ſchwester, ſiſter	ſparren, ſpar
ſchwimmen, to ſwim	ſpaten, ſpade
ſchwingen, to ſwing	ſpecht, ſpeight ( <i>a woodpecker</i> )
ſchwören, to ſwear	ſpeer, ſpear
ſclave, ſlave	ſpeiche, ſpoke
ſee, ſea	ſpelz, ſpelt
ſegel, ſail	ſpenden, to ſpend
ſehen, to ſee	ſperling, ſparrow
ſehne, ſinew	ſpehen, to ſpue ( <i>Latin spuerere</i> )
ſeife, ſoap	ſpieß, ſpit
ſeite, ſide	ſpindel, ſpindle
	ſpinne, ( <i>spinner</i> ), ſpider

spinnen, to spin	Stör, sturgeon
spießen, to split	stottern, to stutter
Sporn, spur	Strand, strand
sprechen, to speak	Strang, ( <i>string</i> ), cord, rope
spreiten, to spread	Straße, street
sprießen, to sprout	streben, to strive
springen, to spring	strecken, to stretch
spritzen, to squirt, to spirt	streng, ( <i>strong</i> ), severe
sputen, to speed	Streich, strike, stroke
Spule, spool	streuen, to strew
Stab, staff	Strich, streak, stroke
Stahl, steel	Stroh, straw
Stahr, starling	Strom, stream
Stafen, stake	Stube, ( <i>stove</i> ), apartment
Stall, stall	Stuhl, stool
Stamm, stem	stumpf, stump
stampfen, to stamp	Sturm, storm
Stapel, staple	stürzen, to start
starren, ( <i>anstarren</i> ), to stare	Stute, ( <i>steed</i> ), a mare
stāt, steady	Stuterei, stud
Stätte, stead	suchen, to seek
statt, <i>anstatt</i> , instead	Sucht, <i>Seuche</i> , malady (from <i>fleisch</i> , <i>sick</i> )
stauen, to stow	Süd, south
stecken, <i>flecken</i> , to stick	Sünde, sin
stehen, ( <i>inst. of standen</i> ), to stay, to stand	Sund, the Sound (in <i>Sound-duty</i> )
stehlen, to steal	Suppe, soup, sup
steif, stiff	süß, sweet.
Stein, stone	
Stelze, stilt	
sterben, to starve	
Stern, star	
steuern, to steer	
Stich, stitch	
Stief- ( <i>e. g.</i> , in <i>Stiefsohn</i> , <i>step-son</i> , etc.)	
Stier, steer	
still, still	
Stoß, stock, stick	
Stoff, stuff	
stopfen, to stop	
	Σ.
	Tafel, table (Latin <i>tabula</i> )
	Tag, day
	Talg, tallow
	Talk, talk (metal)
	tändeln, to dandle
	tapfer, ( <i>dapper</i> ), brave
	Tartische, targe, target
	Tau, tow
	taub, deaf
	Taube, dove
	tauchen, to duck

taufen, (*to dip*), to christen

Teig, dough

Teufel, devil

Thal, dale

Thau, dew

Theer, tar

thellen, to deal

theuer, dear

Thier, (*deer*), animal

Thran, train-oil

thun, to do

Thüre, Thor, door

tief, deep

Tisch, (desk), a table

Tochter, daughter

Tod, death

Tonne, tun

Torf, turf

tragen, (*to drag*), to carrytrauen, to trust (*true, I throw*)trauern, (traurig, *dreary*), to mourn

Traum, dream

träufeln, to drip

treiben, to drive

treten, to tread

treu, true (in the meaning of *faithful*)

triefen, to drip, to drop

triegen, (trügen), to trick

trinken, to drink

trippeln, to trip

trocken, dry, drought

trollen, to troll

Trost, (*trust*), consolation

Truppe, troop

tupfen, to tip

Turteltaube, turtle-dove.

## II.

Uebel, evil

über, over

überwinden, to win over, to conquer

übrig, (that which is over), remaining

Ulm, elm (Latin *ulmus*)

und, and

unter, under

Urtheil, (*ordeal*), judgment.

## B.

Vater, father

Vellchen, violet (Latin *viola*)

vergessen, to forget

verlieren, (*forlorn*), to loseverschwören, (*to forswear*), to conspire

Vogel, fowl, bird

Volk, folk, people

voll, full

vor, before.

## W.

Waare, ware

wachen, to watch

Wachs, wax (bee's)

wachsen, to wax, to grow

Waffe, weapon

Wagen, wagon

wagen, to wage

wägen, wiegen, to weigh

Wahn, (wähnen, *to ween*), delusion

Waid, woad

Wald; wold (an open down, a wild place)

Wall, (*wall*), rampart (Lat. *vallum*)

Wallfisch, whale

Walnusz, walnut

Wallroß, walrus

walten, to wield

walzen, to welter

wälzen, to wallow

wandern, to wander

wann, when

warm, warm	willkommen, welcome
warnen, to warn	Wind, wind
Warze, wart	winden, to wind
was, what	winken, to wink
waschen, to wash	Winter, winter
Wasser, water	wirken, to work
waten, to wade	wischen, to whisk
Watte, wadding	Wispel, wisp
weben, to weave	wissen, ( <i>to wit</i> ), to know
weden, to wake, to awaken	Wittwe, widow
weber, ( <i>whether</i> ), neither	Wittwer, widower
Weg, way; <i>adv.</i> away	Witz, wit
Weh, woe	Woche, week
Weib, (wife), woman	Wohl, weal, well
weich, (weak), soft	Wolf, wolf
Wein, wine	Wolke, ( <i>welkin</i> ), cloud
weinen, (to whine), to cry	Wolle, wool
weiß, white	Wort, word
weise, wise	Wrack, wreck
weit, wide	Wunde, wound
Weizen, wheat	Wunder, wonder
Welt, world	Wunsch, wish
wenn, when	wünschen, to wish
werfen, ( <i>to warp</i> ), to throw	würgen, ( <i>to worry</i> ), to strangle
Werft, <i>n.</i> , Werfte, <i>f.</i> , wharf	Wurm, worm
Werk, work	Wurzel, wort, root
Wermuth, worm-wood	Wuth, wroth, wrath.
Werth, worth	
Wespe, wasp	
West, Westen, west	
Weste, waistcoat (from Lat. <i>vestis</i> )	
wetten, to bet	
Wetter, weather	
wegen, to whet	
Wicht, wight	
Wide, vetch	
Widder, wether (sheep)	
Wick, wick	
Wiesel, weazel	
wild, wild	
Wille, will	

## 3.

Zack, tack
zählen, to tell (teller)
zähm, tame
Zähre, tear
Zange, tongs
Zapf, tap
Zaum, ( <i>team</i> ), bridle
zausen, to tease
Zede, tick (of sheep)
Zehe, toe
Zeichen, token
Zeit, tide, time

Zeitung, tidings, newspaper	zu, to
zerren, to tear	Zucker, sugar (Latin <i>saccharum</i> )
Ziegel, tile (Anglo-Saxon <i>tigel</i> )	Zunder, tinder
ziehen, to tow (zog, discernible in to tug)	Zunge, tongue
ziemen, ( <i>seemly</i> ), to behove	zwaden, to thwack
Zimmer ( <i>timber</i> ), room	Zwehle, towel
Zimmermann, ( <i>timberman</i> ), car- penter	Zweig, twig
Zinn, tin	Zwerch, thwart
Zipfel, tip	Zwerg, dwarf (Anglo-Saxon <i>dweorg</i> )
Zitter, tetter	zwicken, to tweak
Zoll, toll	Zwillisch, twill
	Zwirl, twirl
	zwitschern, to twitter.

THE END.





